**MINISTRY OF SCIENCE AND EDUCATION
OF THE REPUBLIC OF AZERBAIJAN**

AZERBAIJAN UNIVERSITY OF LANGUAGES

ELNARA PUTAYEVA

AMERICAN STUDIES:
GEOGRAPHY, HISTORY, POLITICS, CULTURE

Coursebook

*The coursebook was published
by the the decision of the
Scientific-Methodical Council of AUL
Aprel 23, 2025 (Protocol №44)*

BAKI – 2025

Editor:

Doctor of Philosophy on Philology, Associate Professor
Vussala Elkhan Aghabeyli

Reviewers:

Doctor of Philological Sciences, Associate Professor
Lala Qadir Qurbanova

Doctor of Philosophy on Philology, Associate Professor
Gulmar Fakhraddin Israfilova

Doctor of Philosophy on Philology, Senior teacher
Firangiz Shirin Mahmudova

Elnara Putayeva. *American studies: geography, history, politics, culture*. Coursebook. – Baki: Mutarjim, 2025. – 208 pages.

Copyright

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced without the written permission of the author.

© Elnara Putayeva, 2025

CONTENTS

PREFACE **5**
INTRODUCTORY PART **6**

MODULE 1. THE GEOGRAPHY OF THE UNITED STATES **10**
1. General Notions 10

MODULE 2. A BRIEF HISTORY OF THE U.S. (XVII-XIX CENTURIES) **25**
2.1. Discovery of the New World. Colonization process 25
2.2. Native Americans 32
2.3. War of Independence 35
2.4. Formation of the USA. 40
2.4.1. Constitution. The first steps of the state 40
2.4.2. Civil War. Military Conflict between North and South. Reconstruction 46
2.4.3. Constitutional war 47
2.4.4. Revolutionary war 48

MODULE 3. U.S. POLITICAL SYSTEM **61**
3.1. How is the Government structured? 61
3.2. Features of the U.S. Legislative Branch 63
3.2.1. Structure of the U.S. Congress 63
3.3. Executive authorities in the USA 66
3.3.1. President of the USA 66
3.3.2. Duties of the U.S. President 66
3.4. U.S. Judicial system (The Supreme Court) 72

MODULE 4. CULTURE **79**
4.1. National symbols of the United States of America 80
4.2. American culture of smiles 81
4.3. Traditions, customs and peculiarities of American lifestyle 82

CORRECTIONS AND ANSWERS **102**

REFERENCES **138**

APPENDICES **142**
Appendix 1.1. Canyons 142
Appendix 1.2. Mountains 143
Appendix 1.3. Rivers 144
Appendix 1.4. The Great Lakes 146
Appendix 2.1. Native Americans 150
Appendix 2.2. War of Independence 153
Appendix 2.3. Constitution. The first steps of the state 157
Appendix 2.4. Civil War. Military Conflict between North and South. Reconstruction 161
Appendix 3.1. Political system in the United States 165
Appendix 3.2. U.S. Senate – its functions and responsibilities 167
Appendix 3.3. U.S. House of Representatives 168
Appendix 3.4. Legislative assemblies in the United States 169
Appendix 3.5. Minority groups in the U.S. Congress 170
Appendix 3.6. List of all U.S. presidents 171
Appendix 3.7. Vice President of the United States – and his functions 173
Appendix 3.8. U.S. State Department 174
Appendix 3.9. U.S. Democratic Party 175
Appendix 3.10. U.S. Republican Party 176
Appendix 3.11. Participation and representation of political system among minority groups 178
Appendix 4.1. What is the American dream? 178
Appendix 4.2. Values 182
Appendix 4.3. Federal Holidays 184
Appendix 4.4. State Holidays 191
Appendix 4.5. Ethnic And Religious Holidays 192
Appendix 4.6. U.S. prominent people (In alphabetical order) 195
Appendix 4.7. Some of prominent American writers (In alphabetical order) 202

PREFACE

The coursebook of "American studies: geography, history, politics, culture" has been compiled basing on theoretical materials and exercises. This coursebook has been intended for the university students. The students are expected to improve their knowledge on American studies. The exercises have been compiled regarding different fields. The exercises cover such conditions: "**Find the mistakes and correct them", "Fill in the gaps with suitable words and expressions", "Answer the following questions", "Complete the sentences with suitable words and expressions", "Mark *true* or *false,* correct the *false* statements", "Match the words and their explanations", "Try to explain the following concepts",** etc.

As it is seen, the exercises have been prepared covering logical thinking, lexis, country studies, etc. This coursebook is considered to be useful and valuable as it covers a huge collection of materials on American studies, as well as, exercises and activities.

The author

INTRODUCTORY PART

Each country has its own national history of country studies, because knowledge of other countries is a necessary element of any social, economic and political community of people.

At the earliest stages of the development of human society, information about neighboring tribes and the geography of the places they inhabited was transmitted orally in the form of stories, legends, traditions, songs, as well as in the form of certain types of dances, through drawings, primitive inscriptions and simple maps and diagrams.

With the further development of human civilization and the formation of the first states, knowledge about other countries began to be purposefully and consciously obtained, accumulated, systematized and stored in the form of text records, drawings, models and special maps and diagrams. Structures were created that systematically studied the geographic space beyond the borders of the state; these were diplomatic and military intelligence. A separate branch of country studies at that time was purely scientific research, conditioned by the natural thirst for knowledge of the surrounding world.

Country studies, a discipline in the system of geographical sciences that deals with the study of continents, countries, and large regions.

Country studies show how general patterns and topological features, established by physical geography and economic geography respectively, manifest themselves in specific individual territories.

A country study is the oldest branch of geography, which arose in the ancient world and was brought to life by the practical needs of people in understanding various countries. For thousands of years, beginning with Herodotus and Strabo, it was universal in nature, covering all aspects of nature, history, population, economics, culture, and politics.

The development of science, especially in the 20th century, led to the rapid growth of systematic (branch) geographical sciences and the strengthening of the generalizing aspect in them. At the same time, physical and economic geography became sharply differentiated. This led to the fact that in the country studies literature two different directions began to emerge more and more clearly – economic-geographical and physical-geographical, based on the differences in the laws inherent in nature and society; and the fundamental

incompatibility of the natural and economic zoning grids. In contrast, some geographers often do not attach importance to the fundamental differences between physical-geographical and economic-geographical regions.

The development of country studies, especially in the 20th century, led to a rapid growth of systematic geographical sciences and an increase in their generalizing aspect. This created the conditions for raising the scientific level of country studies.

The **goal** of country studies is to study each specific state in the world.

The **object** of this course is to investigate the geography of U.S. – its rivers, lakes, mountains, canyons; to "wander" in its history; to discuss and analyze its political system; to get enough information about cultural values, holidays, and traditions of the people living in U.S., get some knowledge about prominent people of this country, etc.

The **tasks** of country studies:

- creating an image of the territory, identifying its uniqueness;
- revealing the spatial organization (structure) of the country as a result of the interaction of its territorial elements of a social and natural nature;
- knowledge of the world.

The **tasks** of a student of country studies:

- compare their country with others, showing its position relative to the outside world;
- study the junctions of the internal and external worlds and possible structures arising at these junctions.

The **subject** of country studies is a single territorial macro-structure of the country (geographical territory outlined by state borders).

Functions of country studies:

- evaluative – assessment of the territory from the point of view of the availability of types of resources;
- foreign economic – development of international and domestic ties and relations;
- educational – creation of images of territories to form a geographical picture of the world;
- informational – collection, storage and provision of the opportunity to use information about the nature, population, culture, economy of the country, its characteristics and typical features;
- descriptive, associated with complex country studies, etc.

Areas of country studies:

- physical-geographical area (characterizes nature in an inextricable connection with human life and living conditions);

- economic-geographical area (consideration of the economy and population through the leading specialization of the main branches of the economy in connection with territorial organization);

"Country studies" sets the following main goals:

– Acquiring communication and speech skills;
– Familiarization with the traditions features of culture, history, geography and politics of the country;
– Personality formation and education of a respectful attitude towards a foreign-speaking country and its language.

Language is supposed to be one of the main means of interpersonal communication promoting the development of speech and mental functions, as well as the communication skills. A country study is a means of interest in learning a foreign language. Creativity, imagination and fantasy help people in relationships, in studies and at work, but most importantly, creative people know how to express their individuality, which helps them achieve success in any endeavor.

The broad cultural background created by country studies lessons contributes to the development of linguistic skills and introduces the student to specific aspects of foreign-language culture.

In addition, it should be noted that the lingua-country studies approach is relevant at any stage of training and can be given at any level of complexity. Adults and children of different ages show a keen interest in the lives of their peers abroad, their customs, traditions, everyday life, forms of leisure, etc. Using linguistic and cultural information in an accessible and exciting form helps them to learn elements of a foreign language culture, increases the cognitive activity of students, and creates positive motivation in them.

But we must not forget about country studies texts, which occupy a large place in the process of teaching foreign languages and allow for the implementation. Understanding a foreign culture consists of finding differences between examples of one's own and foreign cultures and understanding them, as well as comparing their country with other countries. Country studies classes make students want to further independently familiarize themselves with country studies material.

Communication, understood as a synonym for communication, is determined by various extra-linguistic factors - situational specificity, national and cultural tradition, etc. Thus, the cause of a communication barrier may be such sociocultural aspects as the peculiarities of culture, religion, geography, economics or politics.

In this regard, the discipline "Country Studies" plays an important role in the general methodological system of professional teaching of a foreign language. In general, country studies can be defined as a complex discipline that systematizes and generalizes various aspects of the life of countries of the world and their inhabitants. The goal of country studies is to ensure communicative competence with a foreign interlocutor, as well as an adequate understanding of the text during translation.

It is also necessary to appreciate that in the process of communication between communicants, non-verbal components are included, for example, gestures, facial expressions, etc., i.e., kinetics considered in linguacultural studies. Thus, for some people, a nod of the head means an affirmation, and for others – a denial. This is all the more relevant since in recent years more and more “extreme” countries have entered the tourism sector, where the issue of understanding national specifics is a matter of safety.

MODULE 1
THE GEOGRAPHY OF THE UNITED STATES

1. General Notions

The United States of America is an enormous country the area of which is more than 9,800,000 km^2. This country occupies a certain (the fourth) place for its large territory and for its population (the third). More than fifty states, a district of federal character and some islands are also included to the list of adjutant territories.

The area of the North American continent, including certain islands, is 24.300,000 km^2. The continent is separated from the South American continent by the Panama Canal, and from the Eurasian continent by the Bering Strait. It stretches 6,000 km from east to west, and 7,000 km from the North to the South. Therefore, there are many seas, bays, islands and peninsulas along its coasts. North America is located in the northern and western hemispheres and is surrounded by three oceans.

The North American continent was part of the ancient Laurasia landmass in the geological past. The east of the mainland is made up of the platform, and the west is made up of geosynclines. It is located on the lithospheric plate of the same name.

From the northern line, this country is adjacent to the state of Canada. The southern part has a borderline with Mexico. The USA supervises some islands both in the Caribbean Sea and the Pacific Ocean.

The main territory of the USA is situated in the central region of the North American continent. That is the main reason why this region is also called "continental USA". Alaska is separated from the continental states, and is situated in the north-west region of North America. In addition, the United States has taken control of a great number of territories in the Caribbean Sea and the Pacific Ocean as well.

If we have a look at the border lines of the USA, we observe that it has a border with Canada in the northern part and Mexico in the southern, as well as a border with Russia in Alaska. The continental part of the USA has a maritime border with the waters of the Atlantic Ocean in the eastern line, the Pacific

Ocean in the western, the Gulf of Mexico in the southern, the Arctic Ocean in the northern lines subsequently.

The territory of the USA is renowned by a diversity of landscape. The western part of the country is mainly formed of highlands, formed by Cordillera. Further to the east, the Rocky Mountains goes parallel to the Cordillera. The enormous spaces between the Great Plains and the Appalachian Mountains detected parallelly to the coast of the Atlantic Ocean.

In the United States, there are the most well-known, expansive and oldest canyons anteceding several million years. The main point characteristic to its historical status is that there were settlements of indigenous Indians there.

There are two classifications of canyons, due to the methods of formation. First can be formed as a result of the corrosion of the soil by the water flows of the river. Secondly, in a situation of tectonic activity, rock layers can also progress.

The main territory of the country has a flat countryside, with the exception of the Appalachian and the Cordillera mountain system. The Cordillera system embraces a tremendous highland that engages the whole western region from Alaska to California and New Mexico. The length of the total mountain range is supposed to be more than 1.5000 km. Part of the Cascade Mountains has volcanoes of different activity and is a seismic hazard. The peaks of the mountains are covered with glaciers, many rivers originate on their slopes. The Cordillera occupy a third of the territory of the United States, and the rest of the mountains are Appalachians and earliest deteriorating highlands.

In the United States of America flow several of the main rivers of North America, thanks to the territorial diversity of the country, slightly less than in neighboring countries, with which it shares some waterways, starting from Yukon and St. Lawrence, both long over 3,000 kilometers.

The United States of America has nearly more than 200,000 rivers stretching over 3 million miles which serve different purposes such as trade routes, borders, and passageways. For example; the largest river in the USA is the Mississippi River, which is the key to America's dominant economic and geopolitical position. The power of America's huge waterways lies in the innumerable amount of money it makes from trade, transportation, and export. Here is the list of the 10 largest rivers in the USA.

The Great Lakes in the U.S. compose Lake Superior, Lake Huron, Lake Michigan, Lake Erie, and Lake Ontario extending to the northern Midwest. Among them only Lake Michigan is situated totally in the United States. States like New York, Pennsylvania, Illinois, Minnesota, Michigan, Ohio Wisconsin, and Indiana keep shoreline on at least one of these lakes. Combined together all the Great Lakes compile the biggest reserve of freshwater of the world. These

lakes enclose more than 94,000 square miles including 11,000 miles of coastline. Their whole capacity is around 20% of the world's surface freshwater.

(**For further information about canyons, mountains, rivers, and lakes see: the *Appendix 1.1,* the *Appendix 1.2,* the *Appendix 1.3,* the *Appendix 1.4).***

EXERCISE 1.1

Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. The country occupies the third place in the list of the largest countries in the world.
2. The state is adjacent to Canada from the southern borders.
3. The northern side has a border with Mexico.
4. Alaska is located in the southwest of North America and Hawaii is an archipelago in the Pacific Ocean.
5. The continental part of the USA is washed by the waters of the Atlantic Ocean in the west, the Pacific Ocean in the east.
6. The Gulf of Mexico flows in the north; Alaska is washed by the Arctic Ocean from the south.
7. The United States supervises a great deal of territories in the Mediterranean Sea.

EXERCISE 1.2

Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. The eastern part of the country is mainly mountainous, formed by Cordillera.
2. Further to the south, the Rocky Mountains stretched parallel to the Cordillera.
3. The relief of the USA mainly consists of mountain systems, hills, plateaus and plains. This applies not only to western areas, but also to remote territories.
4. In the United States, there are the most popular, largest and oldest canyons dating back several thousand years.
5. There are three categories of canyons, divided by the method of formation.
6. Such impressive parameters are due to the fact that the Grand Canyon began to form 10 million years ago.
7. First limestone began to collapse, then shales and sand-stones, and now gold and silver.
8. Oak Creek Canyon’s length is 14 km, its maximum width is 8 km, and its depth is 800 m.

9. The appearance of canyons in this part of the USA is associated with the junction of the Cordillera Mountains and two plateaus.
10. The rocks have scarlet and golden-chocolate shades and are the birthplace of the Yute tribe.
11. Due to strong winds and frosts, there are unusual geological formations here, which is called igloo.
12. The rocks have white, red and orange shades. The Anasazi Indians live in Canyon Bryce.
13. The length of the latter is 65 km.
14. The Paiute tribes have long lived Nine Mile canyon.

EXERCISE 1.3

Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. The Cordillera system includes a huge plateau that occupies the entire eastern territory from Alaska to California and New Mexico.
2. The length of the Cordillera system range is more than 2.5 thousand km.
3. The Appalachians stretch from northwest to southeast and consist of two large plateaus: Cumberland in the north and Allegheny in the south.
4. The length of the Appalachians system is 3900 km.
5. Mountains occupy the space from Mexico to Adirondack.
6. In the northern and eastern part of America, the mountain peaks are covered with plateaus.
7. The average height of the Appalachian Mountains in the system is more than a kilometer above sea level.
8. In Appalachians Mountain the highest are the White and Green Mountains, as well as Longfellow and Adirondack.
9. In the south, the mountains begin in California, gradually rising and expanding to Utah.
10. The main part of the large Rocky Mountains is located in Mexico.
11. The highest point of the region is Mount Albert with a height of 5.4 thousand meters above the sea.
12. The Colorado Mountains are rich in minerals, so gold, silver, copper, and lead are mined there.
13. The Rocky Mountains divide the Indian and Atlantic Oceans.
14. Pacific Mountains begin in the north, where Mount Olympus rises 2.4 thousand meters in Columbia.
15. The western slopes of Pacific Mountains descend into the ocean.

EXERCISE 1.4

Answer the following questions:

1. What territory does The Cordillera system include?
2. How can you describe the part which the Cordillera system occupies in the territory of the U.S.?
3. What is the Cordillera made from?
4. What is the average height of the Appalachian Mountains?
5. What is the highest point of Rocky Mountains in Colorado?
6. Can you count the main minerals of the Rocky Mountains?
7. Can you define the names of two oceans the Rocky Mountains divide?
8. What is the beginning of the Pacific Mountains system?
9. Where do the western slopes of the Pacific Mountains descend into?

EXERCISE 1.5

Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. The United States of America has nearly more than 200,000 rivers stretching over 2 million miles.
2. The Missouri River is the third-longest in North America, expanding over 529,350 square miles.
3. This huge Missouri River rises in the beautiful Rocky Mountains of eastern Montana and excises its way through the heartland of the United States.
4. The Rio Grande River covers about 425,000 square miles and is a river of great natural beauty and cultural importance that serves as a border between countries.
5. This wonderful river (Rio Grande River) grows in Colorado's San Juan Mountains and streams northward, making a part of the US-Mexico border before catching into the Gulf of Arkansas.
6. The Yukon River rises in the mountains of British Columbia and leans across vast tundra and clean woods before draining into the Black Sea.
7. The Red River blows its way through differences of environments, from the lush marshes of Louisiana to the mountains of Texas.
8. The enormous Columbia River is a sign of the Atlantic Northwest.
9. The Columbia River flows 258,000 square miles from its headwaters in the American Rockies to its mouth at the Pacific Ocean in Oregon.
10. The Columbia River served as a route for business and study after European newcomers and researchers settled which resulted in the launching of fishing fellowship, industrial communities, and car trading centers.

11. The Columbia River's vessels, which include the well-known Bonneville Dam and the enormous Grand Atlantic Dam, propose chances for boating, fishing, and wildlife viewing while also giving chance pure electricity and managing flooding.

EXERCISE 1.6

Fill in the gaps with suitable words and expressions:

1. Rivers serve different purposes such as ……, ……,, and ……,.
2. The Mississippi River proceeded as a significant channel for ……, contributing the flow of people and goods and promoting the ……of …… and …… along its sides.
3. Along the way, the Missouri River passes through …… …… and the rocky …… …… until coming together with the Mighty Mississippi River close to St. ……, …….
4. A great number of plants and animals can be found in …… lush valley, adapting well to the dry climates of northern Mexico and the American Southwest.
5. The …… River grew into a doorway to state for thousands of prospectors straining to alter their fortunes in the Yukon Territory during the Klondike Gold Rush of the late …… …….
6. The Red River is roughly …… square miles.
7. The Red River begins from its headwaters in the Texas Panhandle to the …… River in …….
8. But the Red River also creates some difficulties, such as …, and ……, which claim prudent control and protection.
9. The Columbia River, which streams through magnificent scenes of tall ……, …… woods, and ……, is more than just a river; it is an integral part of the history and identity of the area.
10. Currently, the Columbia River maintains a wide range of fields in the …… ……, including transportation, hydroelectric power forming, agriculture, and recreation.

EXERCISE 1.7

Answer the following questions:

1. What is the average length of rivers in the USA?
2. What is the largest river in the USA and how many square miles does it embrace?
3. What is the significance of the Mississippi River?
4. How does the Mississippi River represent the American spirit?

5. Where does the Missouri River begin and where does it pass through?
6. What does the Missouri River support?
7. What kind of problems does the Missouri River face with?
8. What river serves as a border between countries?
9. Where does the Rio Grande River flow into?
10. Can you describe the climate around the Rio Grande River?
11. What does the Yukon River symbolize?
12. Where does the Yukon River lean across? Where does it drain into?
13. What are the popular outdoor leisure activities provided by the environment of the Yukon River?
14. What is the Columbia River famous for?
15. Where does the Ohio and the Mississippi River meet?

EXERCISE 1.8

Mark *true* or *false,* correct the *false* statements:

1. The United States of America has nearly more than 200,000 rivers stretching over 3 million miles which serve different purposes such as trade routes, borders, and passageways.
2. The Yukon River rises in the beautiful Rocky Mountains of western Montana and excises its way through the heartland of the United States.
3. The Rio Grande River covers about 146,000 square miles and is a river of great natural beauty and cultural importance that serves as a border between countries.
4. The Rio Grande River grows in Colorado's San Juan Mountains and streams southward, making a part of the US-Mexico border before catching into the Gulf of Mexico.
5. The Yukon River rises in the mountains of British Columbia and leans across vast tundra and clean woods before draining into the Bering Sea.
6. Stakeholders are collaborating and coming up with creative ways to ensure the Columbia River is managed encouragingly, defending its ecological integrity and cultural heritage for next generations.
7. The Red River is a significant river that runs through the center of the eastern United States.
8. The Red River blows its way through differences of environments, from the lush marshes of Louisiana to the plains of Texas.
9. The Arkansas River maintains a wide range of fields in the Pacific Northwest, including transportation, hydroelectric power forming, agriculture, and recreation.

10. The Columbia River's vessels, which include the well-known Colorado Dam and the enormous Grand Vegas Dam, propose chances for boating, fishing, and wildlife viewing while also giving chance pure electricity and managing flooding.

EXERCISE 1.9

Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. The states preserving coastline on at least one of the Great Lakes include New York, Washington, Illinois, Minnesota, Michigan, Ohio Wisconsin, and Texas.
2. Lake Superior embraces 31,700 square miles being also the deepest among the other lakes with its maximum depth (483 feet) and an average depth (1,335 feet).
3. Crater Lake is a caldera lake, indicating that it is shaped from the wrecked land at the center of a tsunami.
4. Lake Superior, which lies in Illinois, New York, Wisconsin, and Ontario, is a natural miracle of disparate grandeur.
5. Lake Huron's average depth is nearly 285 feet.
6. Lake Huron lies in border line with Wisconsin.
7. Lake Tahoe is situated high in the Sierra Nevada Mountains (on the boundary between Nevada and Canada).
8. Running along the boundaries of Illinois, Indiana, Wisconsin, and Michigan, the aptly named Lake Ontario serves as the greatest lake on Earth to inhabit exclusively in one country.
9. Lake Erie supports a unique environment, including differences of bird species and animal habitats.
10. Lake Ontario which is situated between the states of New York and Ontario, California, being quite small is rather significant

EXERCISE 1.10

Fill in the gaps with suitable words and expressions.

1. The largest lake in the United State that is not part of the Great Lakes is ……...
2. The spectacular ecology of the lake contributes to a varied quantity of varieties that have been used to live in a ……. ……..
3. The present format of the Great Lakes basin is the conclusion of the replacement of huge glaciers through the ……., and this is a process which commenced about …… ……. years ago.

4. The lakes deflux roughly from west to east, draining into the ……. ……. through the St. Lawrence lowlands.
5. Its depth is about ……. feet.
6. There are little tides of about ……. high, but they are relevantly not important.
7. As North America's largest alpine lake, Tahoe forms a natural divide between California and ……. which means variety of sunshine.
8. Lake Tahoe is supposed to be one of the tremendous and indigenous symbols to grace both ……. and Nevadan soil.
9. Lake Michigan, which ranges Illinois, Indiana, ……., and ……., is a magnificent natural feature of the American Midwest.
10. The Lake Michigan coast is ranged with glaring cities like Green Bay, Milwaukee, and ……., suggesting visitors a possibility to mix outdoor adventure with urban investigation during their journeys.
11. The basin slopes from west to east with depths of nearly ……. and ……., approximately.
12. Lake ……. shorelines combine a variety of urban landscapes, glorious parks, and untouched beaches, including a difference of leisure activities for both native residents and tourists.
13. Its shores are full with isolated ranches, fishing resorts, and superb wilderness areas, ……. ……., fishermen, and nature lovers.
14. Lake Oahe is a large basin made by human beings covering North and South Dakota, surrounding an area of ……. ……. kilometers

EXERCISE 1.11

Answer the following questions:

1. What are the main lakes included into "The Great Lakes"?
2. What is the total capacity of the Great Lakes?
3. What are the major cities located on the shores of the Great Lakes?
4. Where is the Great Salt Lake situated?
5. When was the river system and lowlands formed by water erosion existed?
6. What is bordered by the Upper and Lower peninsulas of Michigan, Indiana, Illinois, and Wisconsin?
7. What lake is supposed to be one of the indigenous symbols to embrace both Californian and Nevadan soil?
8. What states embrace Lake Ontario?

EXERCISE 1.12

Mark *true* or *false*, correct the *false* statements:

1. Utah's Great Salt Lake is a magnificent natural phenomenon that comprises 2,460 square kilometers.
2. Lake Michigan lies south of Lake Superior and is bordered by the Upper and Lower peninsulas of Michigan, Indiana, Illinois, and Wisconsin
3. Many miles of high-quality, sandy beaches expand along the lake coasts. Provincial and county lands propose a great number of camping,
4. One of the best and longest tracks around the lake is called the Tahoe Rim trail which skirts the lake for just over 160 miles and promises some unusual views as well as a straight old invocation for your calf muscles.
5. It is the only Great Lake wholly located in the United States, covering 22,300 square miles.
6. Buffalo, Cleveland, and Toledo are situated along the Erie shore, and the main entertainment fields in this region can be distinguished from fishing to diving.
7. With an area of nearly 10.000 square miles Lake Erie is the fourth-largest Great Lake. Its waters are vital resources for drinking, industry, and entertainment.

EXERCISE 1.13

Match the words and their explanations:

1. lithosphere	A) an area of land under the jurisdiction of a ruler or state
2. continental	B) a deep gorge, typically one with a river flowing through it, as found in North America
3. landscape	C) the rigid, outermost shell on Earth
4. slopes	D) forming or belonging to a continent
5. plateaus	E) a social division in a traditional society consisting of families or communities linked by social, economic, religious, or blood ties, with a common culture
6. territory	F) all the visible features of an area of land, often considered in terms of their aesthetic appeal
7. highlands	G) any naturally occurring solid mass or aggregate of minerals or mineral matter
8. canyons	H) the act of shaping into parallel ridges and grooves
9. tribes	I) a surface of which one end or side is at a higher level than another; a rising or falling surface
10. rocks	J) an area of fairly level high ground
11. corrugations	K) an area of high or mountainous land

EXERCISE 1.14

Match the sentence parts. Write the letters according to the numbers.

1.	The western part of the country is mainly formed of highlands,	a.	A third of the United States.
2.	There are two classifications of canyons	b.	by the water flows of the river.
3.	First can be formed as a result of the corrosion of the soil	c.	settled in this region for a long time.
4.	In a situation of tectonic activity,	d.	since minerals as gold, silver, copper, and lead are popular there.
5.	Oak Creek Canyon was formed around	e.	formed by Cordillera.
6.	Extraordinary geological formations	f.	Alaska is formed from branches of the Cordillera.
7.	Canyon Horseshoe is an object from the Canyon lands Park,	g.	the highest point of which is 400 meters
8.	The Paiute Indians have been	h.	because of strong winds and frosts are called hoodoos.
9.	The Cordillera system embraces a tremendous highland	i.	due to the methods of formation.
10.	The Cordillera Mountains occupy	j.	washed by the Green River.
11.	The northern Appalachians are plateaus.	k.	from Alaska to California and New Mexico.
12.	The territory of the USA is formed	l.	rock layers can also progress.
13.	The main part of the large Rocky Mountains	m.	the channel of the Zelenaya River.
14.	The highest peak of the region is Mount Albert	n.	with a height of 4.5 thousand meters above the sea.
15.	Different minerals are very characteristic of the Rocky Mountains,	o.	is embraced in Colorado.
16.	In the northwest of the mainland,	p.	by mountain systems of corrugations and highlands.

EXERCISE 1.15

Match the sentence parts. Write the letters according to the numbers.

1.	The Columbia River streams through	a.	adapting well to the dry climates of northern Mexico and the American Southwest.
2.	Lake Superior is also the deepest among the lakes	b.	Illinois, Indiana, Wisconsin, and Michigan.
3.	Of the five lakes, only Lake Michigan	c.	Michigan, Minnesota, Wisconsin, and Ontario.
4.	A great number of plants and animals can be found	d.	and the rocky Great Plains until coming together with the Mighty Mississippi River.
5.	The Columbia River maintains a wide range of fields	e.	magnificent scenes of tall mountains, lush woods, and narrows.
6.	The Red River runs through differences of environments,	f.	to grace both Californian and Nevadan soil.
7.	The Missouri River passes through seven states	g.	and its max. depth is about 1,335 feet and an average depth - 483 feet.
8.	Crater Lake is the deepest one in the U.S.	h.	embracing over 1.2 million square miles.
9.	The Columbia River is more than just a river,	i.	from the lush marshes of Louisiana to the plains of Texas.
10.	Lake Huron is considered to be another	j.	at 1,943 feet deep.
11.	Lake Superior, which lies in	k.	including transportation, hydroelectric power forming, agriculture, and recreation.
12.	Lake Michigan serves as the greatest lake	l.	is situated completely in the United States.
13.	The Mississippi River is the largest in the north of America,	m.	thundering natural miracle in North America.
14.	Lake Tahoe serves as one of the most shocking natural characters	n.	on Earth to inhabit exclusively in one country.
15.	Lake Michigan runs along the boundaries of	o.	it is an integral part of the history and identity of the area.

EXERCISE 1.16

Choose the right variant.

1) The southern side has a border with ……...
   a) canada b) Russia c) Mexico d) Brazil
2) Alaska is situated in the northwest of North America and Hawaii is an archipelago in the ……....
   a) Atlantic Ocean b) Indian Ocean c) Arctic Ocean d) Pacific Ocean
3) The mainland part of the USA is washed by the Pacific Ocean and the …… Ocean.
   b) Atlantic Ocean b) Indian Ocean c) Arctic Ocean d) Pacific Ocean
4) The Gulf of Mexico flows in the ……...; Alaska is washed by the Arctic Ocean from the north.
   a) North b) South c) East d) West
5) The United States owns a number of territories in the ……....
   a) Caribbean Sea b) Coral Sea c) Sargasso Sea d) Tasman Sea
6) The western part of the country is mainly mountainous, formed by ……....
   a) Appalachian Mountains b) Rocky Mountains
   c) Sierra Nevada Mountains d) Cordillera Mountains
7) Further to the east, the ……... stretched parallel to the Cordillera.
   a) Appalachian Mountains b) Rocky Mountains
   b) c) Sierra Nevada Mountains d) Cordillera Mountains
8) Impressive parameters are due to the fact that the Grand Canyon began to form …… ago.
   a) 14 million years b) 27 million years c) 17 million years
   d) 24 million years
9) The appearance of canyons of the USA is associated with the junction of the ……....
   a) Appalachian Mountains b) Rocky Mountains
   c) Sierra Nevada Mountains d) Cordillera Mountains
10) Due to strong winds and frosts, there are unusual geological formations here, which is called ……....
    a) Hoodoo b) canyon c) valley d) plain
11) The rocks have white, red and orange shades. The ……... live in this region.
    a) Aztecs b) Eskimos c) The Paiute Indians d) Aleuts
12) The Cordillera system includes a huge plateau that occupies the entire western territory from ……...to California and New Mexico.
    a) Alaska b) Washington D.C. c) Hawaii d) Cumberland

13) The length of the Cordillera system range is more than ……...
a) 2.5 thousand km b) 1.3 thousand km c) 2.3 thousand km
d) 1.5 thousand km.

14) The Appalachians stretch from northeast to southwest and consist of two large plateaus: ……...in the south and Allegheny in the north.
a) Yellowsstone b) Cumberland c) Colorado d) Appalachian

15) The length of the Appalachians system is ……....
a) 2300 km b) 2700 km c) 2600 km d) 2400 km

16) The average height of the ……...Mountains in the system is no more than a kilometer above sea level.
a) Rocky Mountains b) Sierra Nevada Mountains
c) Cordillera Mountains d) Appalachian Mountains

17) In ……... the highest are the White and Green Mountains, as well as Longfellow and Adirondack.
a) Adirondack Mountain b) Rocky Mountains
c) Sand Mountain d) Boston Mountains

18) In the south, the mountains begin in New Mexico, gradually rising and expanding to ……....
a) New Jersey b) Utah c) Colorado d) Illinois

19) The main part of the large Rocky Mountains is located in ……....
a) Waterton b) Sierra Nevada c) Alaska d) Colorado

20) The …… are rich in minerals, so gold, silver, copper, and lead are mined there.
a) Appalachians Mountains b) Pacific Mountains
c) Rocky Mountains d) Saint Elias

21) The Rocky Mountains divide the …… Oceans.
a) Atlantic and Indian b) Indian and Pacific
c) Pacific and Arctic d) Pacific and Atlantic

22) Pacific Mountains begin in the north, where Mount Olympus rises 2.4 thousand meters in ……....
a) Washington b) New York c) California d) Alaska

23) The …… slopes of Appalachians Mountains descend into the ocean.
a) eastern b) western c) southern d) northern

24) Utah's Great Salt Lake is a magnificent natural phenomenon that comprises…… square kilometers.
a) 2,560 b) 2,650 c) 2,460 d) 2,640

25) With an area of nearly 10.000 square miles …… is the fourth-largest Great Lake. Its waters are vital resources for drinking, industry, and entertainment.

a) Lake Superior b) Lake Erie c) Lake Huron d) Lake Ontario

EXERCISE 1.17

For self-research

Share ideas with your group mates about some interesting facts of the U.S. geography: rivers, mountains, lakes, etc. Use the following key words:

Grand Canyon, Cordillera, Rocky Mountains, plateaus, the Appalachian and the Cordillera Mountain system, the Indian and Atlantic Oceans, canyons, Oak Creek Canyon, Mississippi River, Missouri River, the Columbia River, The Colorado River, Lake Powell and Lake Mead, Los Angeles, and Las Vegas, the Great Lakes, Michigan, Minnesota, etc.

EXERCISE 1.18

For self-research

a) Make a comparison of mountains, rivers, lakes and geographical situation of USA and Azerbaijan.
b) In pairs or small groups, use the map to plan your own sightseeing tour of the U.S. List the places to visit in order to retell the reasons of your choices.

MODULE 2

A BRIEF HISTORY OF THE U.S. (XVII-XIX CENTURIES)

2.1. Discovery of the New World. Colonization process

At the end of the 15th century, Spain made persistent attempts to penetrate into the East. On August 3, Christopher Columbus' first expedition set sail from the Spanish port of Palos, heading west across the Atlantic Ocean. It consisted of three small caravels: "Santa Maria", "la Pinta" and "Santa Clara". The total number of crews of three ships was about 90 people. Not everything was smooth in the search for funds for a risky trip. Enlisting the support of the Queen of Spain herself, Columbus still managed to equip an expedition.

Heading west across the Atlantic Ocean, the expedition approached the island of Guanahani from the Bahamas group on October 12, 1492. Columbus named it San Salvador, which meant "savior." This day is considered the official date of the discovery of America.

This expedition aroused interest in the further development and consolidation of the already discovered lands, which were mistaken for a part of East Asia.

On September 25, 1493, Columbus led a new expedition, which already consisted of a serious fleet: 14 caravels and 3 merchant ships, on which there were 2,000 sailors, soldiers and colonists. On May 30, 1498, Columbus set off on his third voyage. His ships (six in number) reached the South American continent near the mouth of the Orinoco River, opening the island of Trinidad before that.

In May 1502, Columbus organized the fourth voyage on four sailboats. He continued to search for the coast of India and discovered, unknowingly, the coast of present-day Central America, which is his greatest merit.

Incredibly, until the end of his life (he died on May 20, 1506) Christopher Columbus was sure that he had reached the shores of Asia.

Columbus brought tobacco, corn, potatoes, a small amount of gold and several aborigines from the first voyage. The second raid was more productive, and American plants were brought to Europe. Horses came to America – they had not been there before. Nowadays, the transfer of flora and fauna from

mainland to mainland is called *Columbian exchange.* The colonists also brought diseases to America to which the Indians had no immunity. This led to epidemics that claimed the lives of millions of Indians.

And it was only thanks to the voyages of the navigator Amerigo Vespucci that the truth was restored. It was he who proved that the lands discovered by Columbus were a completely unknown continent – the New World.

It is known that Vespucci and Columbus met in Spain, and their shared appreciation of research and similar ventures only increased Vespucci's interest in the field. At this time, the Queen was looking for explorers to navigate the Atlantic and help explore the West Indies. Vespucci reportedly joined the Spanish navy in 1497 for his first expedition.

In 1492, Amerigo joined the Spanish naval service, participated in the equipment of the second and third expeditions of Christopher Columbus, and himself maintained friendly relations with him. In 1499-1500, Vespucci sailed with the expedition of Alonso Ojeda as navigator, under his command were two ships equipped at his own expense.

In 1499, 45-year-old Amerigo set off on a long journey himself. Why he spontaneously decided to change his field of activity remains a mystery. Biographers have two assumptions about this. According to one guess, despite serving a rich house, the Italian lived in poverty. His salary was small, and his conscience did not allow him to appropriate other people's money, which he managed. According to the opposite opinion, the head of marine affairs, Vespucci, lived richly and made a considerable fortune over 30 years of his career.

This was the situation in Virginia; a colony of the Virginians arrived on the rocky shores of Cape Cod, not far from the future city of Boston, in November, 1620; when a ship with the poetic name “Mayflower” was obligatorily docked. Its passengers were stern people – puritans, traveling from England first to Holland, and now to America. Before going ashore, the men gathered together and signed an agreement on the joint construction of life in new places according to the precepts of the puritan faith and morality. The Pilgrims founded the colony of New Plymouth, marking the beginning of New England. Life overseas turned out to be quite hard, since hunger and disease destroyed the colonists. In the first winter, half of the settlers died. The rest were helped by the Indians, who taught the newcomers how to fish and grow corn. The grateful colonists held a dinner with the Indians in Plymouth in October 1621, which marked the beginning of the national holiday – Thanksgiving, which is now celebrated annually in the United States at the end of November. Over time, the Puritans, overcoming harsh natural conditions and pushing out the Algonquian and Iroquois Indians, expanded their territory and

took up farming, crafts, and maritime industries. The dominance of the theocracy of the upper clergy was established in the colony, punishing in the strictest manner everyone for the slightest deviation from the faith and instructions of their elders. The colonists soon became convinced that here, in "harsh" America, in the "Promised Land," they would build a biblical "city on a hill". In the spring of 1630, 11 Oregon ships delivered colonists to Boston led by J. Winthrop. This colony and New Plymouth later merged to form the Massachusetts Colony. It developed successfully, and soon the rigid framework of theocratic rule that was supported by the governor became too tight for the colonists, who were more democratically inclined. Representatives of their sentiments spoke openly, preaching equality and freedom of religion. Taking advantage of the friendship with the Indians, a group of supporters founded a new colony in 1636 with the most democratic order and separation of church and state. They called it Rhode Island.

Another persecuted man, Pastor T. Hooker, led his regents with their families, cattle and all property into the wild forests and stood on the banks of the river Connecticut. To keep the population, the theocratic elite, with the consent of Governor Winthrop, began to persecute those of other faiths. To this end, he organized the Vedovskie trials, or "witch hunts," in 1692, during which 19 women and relatives were executed or died in prison.

Later English monarchs generously distributed lands in America to their friends, courtiers or lenders. This is how the colony of Ireland arose, a gift from the king to Lord Baltimore. The king's brother, the Duke of York, received the newly conquered province and city of New Amsterdam from the Dutch, renamed New York. For trinkets, currently valued at no more than $24, Manhattan was bought from the Indians, which became the center of the future giant city of New York. The colonies of North and South Carolina were named after King Charles I. The leader of the "Society of Friends", W. Penn, the son of a royal admiral, released from prison, received a huge territory from the king. Along the colonies of the Atlantic coast, a relatively narrow strip stretched 13 colonies, divided into three groups according to geographical and socioeconomic characteristics. The northern group (New England) included the colonies of New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Connecticut, Vermont and Rhode Island.

Small farming and home industries (for example, weaving) were developed here, but there were also separate workshops and even factories that worked for navigation and fishing. In the colonies they were engaged in timber processing, iron processing, and shipbuilding. As all colonies participated in trade strong democratic elements developed here, and freer orders of tradition existed. The Mid-Atlantic group consisted of New York, New Jersey, and

Pennsylvania. These were mainly grain-growing colonies, where large plantations were combined with small farms of free farmers. Cattle breeding and various industries developed alongside with trade. Plantation farming and slave labor predominated in Georgia, Virginia, Maryland, North and South Carolina. The new settlers cultivated tobacco, cotton, rice, and indigo - a plant that produced a persistent color of beautiful blue. Almost all of these products were transported to England. Industry was poorly developed due to the influx of manufactured goods from England. These colonies were dominated by large planters and had their own aristocracy, which, however, actively participated in trade. Attempts to force the proud Indians to work ended tragically: they preferred death to captivity. In 1619, the Dutch brought the first blacks from Africa to America. They were caught there or bought for next to nothing from the owners. Multi-tribal and multi-lingual, in a state of confusion, frightened, who did not understand anything, the blacks more easily obeyed and worked more willingly, driven by hunger and the scourge of the overseer. Having become comfortable, the blacks tried to resist, ran away, and even rebelled (1712, 1741). But in reality they constituted a submissive labor force on the plantations. With the advent of the Abbes, the slave trade also arose. It became an important element of the so-called coal trade: molasses from the sugar plantations of the West Indies was transported to New England.

The solution to the most important questions - about land and labor - contributed to the rise of the economy of the colonies. This was also helped by the abundance of natural resources and the need to supply a population that could not be fed, clothed, or by delivering everything needed only from England, three thousand miles away, across the ocean. Gradually, independent economic life improved in America as the main occupation of the colonists was agriculture.

Colony	**Establishment reasons**	**Some interesting facts**
Virginia	to become richer	The colonists wanted to be rich. They didn't want to do the difficult work and preferred to live easily. Later the newcomers found tobacco and began to use it in trade with Europe.
New Hampshire	for religious, political, and economic reasons	Settlers left Massachusetts for New Hampshire. They preferred trading and fishing.

Massachusetts	religious freedom	The Puritans established the Massachusetts Bay Colony. They arrived at Massachusetts to look for religious freedom.
Rhode Island	religious freedom	Some Puritans decided to launch a new colony with religious freedom. They demanded new rules to be established like separation of church from state.
Connecticut	religious freedom and economic reasons	Puritans left Massachusetts for establishing a new colony because of better farmland.
Maryland	to make money from land sales	The King of England gave the land to Lord Baltimore and he in his turn sold the land to immigrants.
New York	for political reasons	The Dutch were inhabiting in New Netherlands, but the British decided to name this land New York.
Pennsylvania	for religious freedom	Settlers were promised to gain religious freedom in this state.
New Jersey	to make money from rent	Landowners earned a great amount of money from newcomers using their lands.
Delaware	for political reasons	William Penn gave this land to immigrants from Pennsylvania as they demanded to establish a separate government.
North and South Carolina	for economic reasons	Since the King of England handed out the land, and the landowners used this chance to rent it to settlers.
Georgia	for political and economic reasons	England residents left their country and came here to earn more money because they were in crisis. The government gave them land to use for farming purposes.

EXERCISE 2.1

Try to explain the following concepts:

1. Mayflower…….
2. Puritans…….
3. Pilgrims…….
4. Thanksgiving…….
5. Colonies……

6. New England…….
7. Multi-tribal ……...
8. multi-lingual……..
9. witch hunts……
10. religion……..

EXERCISE 2.2

Answer the following questions:

1. What was the name of the first colony?
2. How passed the first year of the settlers? Who helped them to survive?
3. Whom did the colonists hold a dinner with? What did this holiday mark?
4. Where did colonists arrive led by J. Winthrop?
5. How was the new colony called founded in 1636?
6. Who sold Manhattan?
7. Who were the colonies of North and South Carolina named after?
8. When did the Dutch bring the first blacks from Africa to America?
9. When did the blacks try to rebel?
10. What was the main occupation of the colonists?

EXERCISE 2.3

Mark *true* or *false* and correct the *false* statements:

1. On August 3, Christopher Columbus' first expedition set sail from the Spanish port of Palos, heading west across the Atlantic Ocean.
2. Vespucci reportedly joined the Spanish navy in 1507 for his first expedition.
3. In 1499-1500, Vespucci sailed with the expedition of Alonso Ojeda as navigator, under his command were four ships equipped at his own expense.
4. Enlisting the support of the Queen of Spain herself, Columbus still managed to equip an expedition.
5. Nowadays, the transfer of flora and fauna from mainland to mainland is called *American exchange.*
6. The colonists also brought diseases to Europe to which the Europeans had no immunity.
7. At this time, the Queen was looking for explorers to navigate the Atlantic and help explore the West Indies.
8. On September 25, 1493, Columbus led a new expedition, which already consisted of a serious fleet: 14 caravels and 3 merchant ships
9. In May 1492, Columbus organized the fourth voyage on four sailboats.
10. Vespucci brought tobacco, corn, potatoes, a small amount of gold and several aborigines from the first voyage.

EXERCISE 2.4

Fill in the gaps with the suitable words and phrases:

1. A colony of the ……. arrived on the rocky shores of ……., not far from the future city of Boston, in November, ……. .
2. ……. passengers were stern people – puritans, traveling from England first to ……., and now to America.
3. In the spring of ……., 11 Oregon ships delivered colonists to ……. led by J. ……. .
4. This colony and New Plymouth later merged to form the ……. .
5. The leader of the "Society of Friends", W. Penn, the son of a royal admiral, released from prison, received a huge territory from the king at the end of the ……. .
6. With the advent of the Abbes, the slave trade also arose. It became an important element of the so-called …….: molasses from the sugar plantations of the West Indies was transported to ……. .
7. A ship with the poetic name "……." was obligatorily docked.
8. The rest of the settlers were helped by the ……., who taught the newcomers how to fish and grow corn.
9. The grateful colonists held a dinner with the Indians in Plymouth in October ……., The dinner hold in ……. marked the beginning of the national holiday – ……., which is now celebrated annually in the United States at the end of November.
10. Along the colonies of the ……. coast, a relatively narrow strip stretched 13 colonies, divided into ……. groups according to geographical and socioeconomic characteristics.
11. In 1619, the ……. brought the first blacks from ……. to America.
12. Having become comfortable, the blacks tried to resist, ran away, and even rebelled in ……. and in ……. .
13. Independent economic life improved in America as the main occupation of the colonists was ……. .
14. ……. ……. and ……. ……. were developed here, but there were also separate workshops and even factories that worked for navigation and fishing.
15. In the colonies they were engaged in ……. processing, ……. processing, and shipbuilding.

EXERCISE 2.5

Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. The Pilgrims founded the colony of New Orleans, marking the beginning of New England.
2. The dominance of the theocracy of the upper clergy was established in the colony, punishing in the strictest manner everyone for the slightest deviation from the rules of behaviour of their elders.
3. Another persecuted man, King Charles I., led his regents with their families, cattle and all property into the wild forests and stood on the banks of the river Illinois.
4. Plantation farming and slave labor predominated in Hampshire, Virginia, Massachusetts, North and South Carolina.
5. The dinner hold in Rhode Island marked the beginning of the national holiday – Christmas, which is now celebrated annually in the United States at the end of November.
6. Over time, the Puritans, overcoming harsh natural conditions and pushing out the Hawaiians and American Indians, expanded their territory and took up farming, crafts, and maritime industries.
7. The northern group included the colonies of New Hampshire, Texas, Connecticut, Vermont and Virginia Island.
8. Along the colonies of the Indian coast, a relatively narrow strip stretched 13 colonies, divided into two groups according to geographical and socioeconomic characteristics.
9. Taking advantage of the friendship with the Indians, a group of supporters founded a new colony in 1676 with the most democratic order and separation of church and state.
10. The new settlers cultivated tobacco, cellulose, rice, and violet - a plant that produced a persistent color of beautiful blue.

2.2. Native Americans

By the time representatives of Europeans arrived in North America, local Aborigines had already lived on these lands for many years. Archaeological excavations show that the settlement of local tribes in these areas occurred about 30,000 before the introduction of Europeans to the New Continent. A large part of these tribes were destroyed in the struggle with the invaders, and the others due to the diseases that the Europeans brought with them. Indigenous tribes, which lost most of the land at the end of the invasions, currently make up only 2% of the total U.S. population.

One of the main forms of communication between the Indians and the Europeans was trade relations. For example: in areas where Chinook was widely spoken, trade relations between Indians and Europeans led to the emergence of English dialects, which included Indians expressions. As a result of these relations, a significant amount of words and phrases entered American English. Many of these borrowed words were related to the way of life, customs and traditions of the Indians, and the tools they used on a daily basis. Most of these words are in active use in the language.

However, Native Indians became more identified in public discourses in the late 18th and early 19th centuries with "wildness". On the contradiction, the white Europeans estimated like "civilized". Native inhabitants were highly excluded from "melting pot" visions of the future American, together with Asian Americans and African Americans,"Mixing with each other and with the Natives", Europeans are transformed into Americans by a process of biological changes. Concerning the relations between Europeans and Native Americans, Thomas Jefferson proposed "to let our settlements and theirs meet and blend together, to intermix, and become one people incorporating themselves with us as citizens of the U.S." Jefferson's intended 'to blend' along with 'to melt' and indicated the importance of 'new race emergence'. This future forecast was also spread by other Founding Fathers.

Actually, "some influential southerners in the 18th century demanded intermarriage the solution to the Indian problem". In fact, Jefferson's "proposal of interracial nationhood" was double-natured as it accepted the dissolution of the Native Americans and their cultures through racial mixing. Today, Jefferson was estimated as either the admirer of Native American character and language or as the planner of cultural removal policy. While he told the chiefs of the Upper Cherokee that "your blood will mix with ours", it could be evaluated both like a promise and a threat. In the following century, this idea will be vividly connected to Anglo-American intentions to obliterate the Native population through racial blending.

(**For further information about Native Americans see: the *Appendix 2.1***)

EXERCISE 2.6

Answer the following questions:

1. Which organizations give opportunities to Native American students for the best educational environment?
2. How many groups are included in F.Boas and E.Sepir's classification of languages?
3. What fields are Indian words mainly related to?

4. What are the main reasons of Native American tribes being destroyed?
5. What was the reason of many Native Americans starting a war with the British?
6. How many American Indians moved to big cities from 1950 to 1980?
7. Why were Native Indians identified with “wildness”?
8. What did Thomas Jefferson propose?
9. Were native inhabitants included into, or excluded from “melting pot”?
10. How is Th. Jefferson characterized today?

EXERCISE 2.7

Complete the sentences using appropriate words and expressions:

1. A large part of these tribes were destroyed in the struggle with the invaders, and ……
2. And the number of words and expressions denoting the way of life, ……..
3. During the American Revolution many Native Americans started a war with the British, ……....
4. Alongside with wars and the spread of infectious diseases, ……
5. Native Americans were able to take control over schools, ……..
6. P.Turner's classification, in which he distinguished different languages based ……....
7. P.Turner classified the languages of the tribes living in America into ……
8. Such organizations as NCAI give some opportunities ……
9. The New York State Legislature provides funding ……
10. The formation of a new way of life of Northern Americans was directly related to ……

EXERCISE 2.8

Write short paragraphs concerning each of the following questions:

1. What is a clan?
2. What does the word “Haudenosaunee” mean?
3. What is Native American cuisine famous for?
4. What are the moccasins used for?
5. Get some information about wampum,

EXERCISE 2.9

Make a self-research on the topic of “Modern lifestyle of Native Americans”.

2.3. War of Independence

In the 30-40s of the 18th century the British government, seeing the growing economic independence of the colonies, tried to suppress it and thereby laid the foundation for a conflict, the meaning of which was not understood at first, either in England or in America. The colonies were still largely dependent on England: it was a stable market for colonial goods and in return supplied industrial products and free metal currency. In turn, the colonies gave England greater profits by exporting cheap raw materials and goods and purchasing more expensive finished products. This corresponded to the policy of mercantilism then adopted in Europe, according to which the accumulation of gold was considered a sign of the economic health and wealth of the country. The colonies helped England in its endless wars with France, including on the American mainland.

From the second half of the XVIII century English policy towards the colonies began to become tougher. Colonists were not allowed to get engaged in iron processing, ship building, textiles and woolen products exporting. The import of cars and other equipment and inventions in the colonies, as well as the departure of craftsmen, were prohibited. London tried, with the help of navigation acts, to limit the trade of the colonies with other countries and especially harshly persecuted smuggling trade. The severity increased after the victorious Seven Years' War. During military operations, the British took away from France part of Canada (Quebec) and part of the possessions in the American Midwest. But the victory cost high, and in London it was agreed that the colony would cost a victory, and in London they decided that the colonies should reimburse these expenses. At the same time, it was possible to further limit their independence. Prime Minister J. Greenville easily convinced King George III of the necessity and possibility of placing additional burdens on the colonists. New duties were introduced on the import of sugar and molasses, and the "triangular trade" was threatened. Measures were tightened against smuggling, which all colonies were involved in.

In America, under the pretext of protection from the newly defeated Indians (Pontiac's rebellion of 1763), another 10 thousand soldiers were stationed, whom the colonists were supposed to provide with everything necessary. Suddenly, the production of paper money was stopped in the colonies, and all payments to England by the colonies had to be made in silver. A special decree of the king prohibited Americans from settling beyond the Allegheny Mountains. At that time, Catholic Quebec received permission to develop lands up to the Mississippi and Ohio rivers, which the colonists had

long had plans for. These measures caused great damage to the economy of the colonies, undermined the principle of free enterprise and meant an open attack on the property of the colonists.

The day before, only a small amount was left - an 8-penny deposit for tea, which was imported to America by the East India Company. This tax could not ruin the Americans, especially the smugglers who imported the same goods without any duties at all. But we were talking about principle. The question was being resolved: what could the metropolis do and what could it not do in the colonies? In December 1773 the famous "Boston Tea Party" took place. Respectable citizens, disguised as Indians, painted their faces and adorned their hair, snuck onto the ships bringing tea to the East India Company, and threw the cargo into the sea. England responded with immediate reprisals. The port of Auston was closed and blockaded, Massachusetts was deprived of the right of self-government, and citizens were deprived of freedom of assembly.

(**For further information about War of Independence see: the *Appendix 2.2***)

EXERCISE 2.10

Try to explain the following concepts:

1. profits ……...
2. military operations……
3. Quebec……..
4. rebellion ……...
5. decree ……...
6. Battle of Bunker Hill…….
7. Whigs……
8. Tories……
9. troops ……
10. sabotage ……
11. patriots……...
12. crowned scoundrels……..
13. pamphlet ……...
14. metropolis…….
15. patriots ……
16. delegates ……..
17. olive branch……...
18. Declaration of Independence. ……..
19. agreement ……
20. alliance ……

EXERCISE 2.11

Answer the following questions:

1. What was the name of part of Canada that the British took away from France?
2. Who convinced King George III of the necessity and possibility of placing additional burdens on the colonists?
3. When did Pontiac's rebellion happen?
4. How many people were killed and wounded near Lexington?
5. How did the British defeat the colonists in a battle called the "Battle of Bunker Hill"?
6. When did the famous "Boston Tea Party" take place?
7. Who ere the Whigs and the Tories?
8. When did the Second Continental Congress take place?
9. What did the Congress send to the king?
10. When was the Declaration of Independence adopted?
11. Who organized the fictitious trading house, which supplied the Americans with weapons and supplies?
12. What was the turning point in relationship of France with the United States?
13. Who helped England in its endless wars with France?
14. When the English policy towards the colonies began to become tougher?
15. What were the colonists not allowed to get engaged in?
16. Whom did the English government try to drag into the war on their side?
17. What was signed in Paris on September 3, 1783?
18. How did the War of 1775-1783 end?
19. Who was Major General Benedict Arnold? Why did his name become a symbol of betrayal in America today?
20. What were the Americans' difficulties, shortcomings, and mistakes in the war?

EXERCISE 2.12

Complete the sentences with suitable words and expressions:

1. …… including on the American mainland.
2. Colonists were not allowed to get engaged in iron processing, ……
3. Prime Minister J. Grenville easily convinced King George III ……
4. In America, under the pretext of protection from the newly defeated Indians, ……

5. In December 1773 the famous "Boston Tea Party" took place. Respectable citizens, disguised as Indians, …….
6. Only on the third attempt, having lost up to a thousand people, the British defeated the untrained, ……..……
7. Moreover, among the population there were not only patriots (Whigs), supporters of England (Tories, or loyalists). The latter (up to 30 thousand people) fought together ……..……..
8. Most of the Indians helped England, which promised to preserve their lands. Some of the ……..……..
9. The Congress immediately sent an "olive branch" to London - a petition to the king, in which he assured ……..…….
10. ……..…by the separatism of individual colonies.
11. ……..……. Since then, this day has been celebrated annually in the United States as the main national holiday – Independence Day.
12. B. Franklin arrived in France with an unofficial mission. He found that the court, ……..…….
13. Having begun negotiations, England simultaneously began to negotiate with France and Spain on the division of the American West, when J. Jay, secretly from Franklin and the French, ……
14. In it, England recognized the independence of the USA and the results of the War of ……..……..
15. There were also editors like Major General Benedict Arnold. Entangled in money matters, he fell into the snare of the British, surrendered ……..…….

EXERCISE 2.13

Mark *true* or *false* and correct the *false* statements:

1. From the second half of the XVIII century English policy towards the colonies began to become tougher.
2. The severity increased after the victorious Ten Years' War. During military operations, the British took away from Russia part of Canada (Quebec) and part of the possessions in the American Midwest.
3. A special decree of the king prohibited Americans from settling beyond the Rushmore Mountains.
4. At that time, Catholic Quebec received permission to develop lands up to the Mississippi and Ohio rivers, which the colonists had long had plans for.
5. The port of Auston was closed and blockaded, Illinois was deprived of the right of self-government, and citizens were deprived of freedom of assembly.

6. The British destroyed the warehouse, repelling the attacks of the Minutemen, but on the way back on April 9, 1795, they were subjected to massive shelling near Lexington and, having lost 723 people killed and wounded,
7. The center of loyalism became New York, South Carolina and Georgia, which were economically closely connected with the metropolis.
8. In May 1775, almost all the delegates of the First Congress again gathered in Philadelphia for the Second Continental Congress, which met intermittently until March 1781.
9. In 1667, these relations were enshrined in the "Articles of Confederation" adopted by Congress, which gave the states greater rights, even to the point of declaring war.
10. At a meeting in May 1796, Virginia delegate Richard Lee rose and introduced the historic decision: "Resolved, that these united colonies are and of right ought to be free and independent states".
11. The Congress proclaimed the equality of all people and such inalienable human rights as "life, liberty and the pursuit of happiness."
12. The defeat of the British at Aratoga turned out to be a turning point: France openly opposed England, signing an agreement on alliance and trade with the United States in February 1778
13. The government of Louis XVI supported the famous playwright P.O.Beaumarchais, who organized the fictitious trading house, which supplied the Americans with weapons and supplies.
14. They launched military operations at sea such as Gibraltar, so that the French were even afraid of an invasion of their islands.
15. The English government tried to drag Austria into the war on its side, but Empress Catherine II, responding very kindly to George II and sincerely indignant at the republican rebels in her heart, refused to let the soldiers go.
16. Nevertheless, the Americans were able to achieve an agreement with England on the basis of equality. It was signed in Paris on September 3, 1783.
17. Among the many heroes of the war one can name the leader of the partisans J. Clark, the heroic sailor J. Jones, General Fr. Mary, nicknamed the Swamp Fox, General N. Green and others.
18. July 14, 1785 Congress adopted the Declaration of Independence. Since then, this day has been celebrated annually in the United States as the main national holiday – Independence Day.
19. Most of the Indians helped England, which promised to preserve their lands. Some of the Alqonquains also supported the British, who promised liberation.

20. Only on the third attempt, having lost up to a thousand people, the British defeated the untrained, poorly armed colonists in a battle called the "Battle of New World".

2.4. Formation of the USA.
2.4.1. Constitution. The first steps of the state

After the war, the young state found itself in a difficult situation. Historians talk a lot about the "critical 80s". The economy was undermined by the long-term war and the severance of previous economic ties. There was a decline in production in agriculture and industry. There was no gold and silver, but there was an abundance of completely depreciated paper money. There was not enough labor in the South. The cost of living increased unusually, and almost the entire settlement was burdened with debt. The most radical elements wanted the revolution to continue, dreaming of equality of property. Conservative forces, regretting the coup, were looking for ways to reconcile with the former metropolis. The Congressional treasury was empty; the troops did not receive their salaries and the promised benefits. There was unrest in the army. A group of officers developed a plan to establish a monarchy. Washington was offered the throne. He angrily rejected this proposal, although he did not betray the conspirators. Unrest broke out among urban people and farmers, from whom they demanded payment of debts, and always in hard currency. In the New England states, which became the center of these unrest, moneylenders and merchants mercilessly ruined farmers and artisans. War heroes ended up in debtor's prisons. The outraged people attacked the courts, burned debt obligations, and freed prisoners. The most formidable was the uprising of 1786-1787 in Massachusetts, led by farmer and former revolutionary army captain Daniel Shays. Several thousand people took part in it. However, the Oisks managed to disperse the rebels. Shays was sentenced to death, but was later pardoned as a war veteran. Congress, deprived of real power, frantically searched for a way out of this situation. He confiscated and sold off the lands of the crown, large landowners - the British and the Oyalists (the latter – with their families there were up to 100 thousand people - fled to Canada and the West Indies). These lands passed to large farmers, planters and land speculators. The army was disbanded. Instead of salaries, soldiers and officers were given certificates for land plots, which were bought from them by speculators. Economic difficulties and the growth of social contradictions, the difficult international situation of a state that was by no means universally recognized required the creation of a strong central government. This was

necessary due to the growing separatism of the states, which interfered with the development of trade, fishing and inland navigation. The economy needed the protection of the single market. Only a strong government could resolve the issue of Western lands and debts. The young nation needed state formation and protection. The Articles of Confederation of 1777 were in no way consistent with these objectives. A detailed Constitution that served the interests of 1787 was needed. There were 55 delegates from all states. Only representatives from Od Island refused to come. The delegates formed the Constitutional Convention. An institutional convention was held in the hall. In the meeting room there were bankers, planters, merchants, lawyers, former generals, and only representatives of the "lower classes" were not present. John Washington was elected chairman of the convention. Among the delegates, 82-year-old B. Franklin, the one-armed and wooden-legged Governor of New York R. Morris, A. Hamilton, J. Jay, J. Madison from Virginia, an expert on government issues, prone to philosophical generalizations, stood out. Jefferson was absent from sophistic generalizations. Jefferson was absent (he was on a mission in France).

Almost all the delegates were participants in the war and had some experience in government. They were united by the main goal: to put an end to the detachment of the states, to prevent monarchical encroachments, to curb, as one delegate said, frantic democracy," and most importantly, to create the fundamental law of a strong centralized and at the same time democratic state. However, there was much disagreement about the means to achieve these goals. For four months, despite the intense heat, the members of the convention met with closed doors and windows, spending time in no less heated and lengthy disputes. They tried to keep the discussion secret, but the country learned about it through the press and also vigorously discussed the progress of the work of the Congress. Finally, on September 17, 1787, the majority of delegates - the so-called "Founding Fathers" - accepted a compromise project and signed the text of the first U.S. Constitution that still exists today, which transformed America from a vague confederation into a federal (union) state. Its members are the states (union) nation. Its members, the states, retained many rights, but the main ones that concerned the entire state (i.e., issues in the field of foreign policy, harrowing, finance, control over the drafting and observance of general laws) were transferred to the federal government. The Constitution provided for the principle of separation of the "branches of government" (i.e., the executive, legislative and judicial powers) and a system of so-called "checks and balances", which did not allow some authorities to become stronger at the expense of others and prevented any attempts to establish the omnipotence of one person. Executive power was transferred to the President of the United

States. He was elected for four years and was the head of state and government, as well as the Commander-in-Chief of the armed forces. The President had great powers like appointing the government, ambassadors, and representatives of the supreme court. He governed with the help of secretaries (ministers) of the relevant departments accountable only to him, but subject to approval by Congress. In case of illness, death, inability to rule or impeachment, the post of vice president of the country was introduced. The person holding this post was also the chairman of the Senate meetings. They did not attach any importance to this post, as can be seen from the estimate of 25 thousand dollars, and for the vice president –- only five thousand dollars.

(**For further information about the Constitution see: the *Appendix 2.3***)

EXERCISE 2.14

Try to explain the following concepts:

1. Constitution ……..
2. Congressional treasury …….
3. Monarchy……..
4. Oyalists ……
5. The Senate……
6. lower classes…….
7. "Founding Fathers…….
8. the White House ……..
9. Commander-in-Chief ……..
10. legislative power ……...
11. predatory……..
12. the House of Representatives ……..
13. candidates …….
14. Supreme Court …….
15. Bill of Rights…….
16. the Capitol…….
17. E pluribus unum ……..
18. motto ……
19. American Dream……..
20. Jeffersonian democracy……

EXERCISE 2.15

Answer the following questions:

1. Why did a group of officers develop a plan to establish a monarchy?
2. Who was the leader of uprising in 1786-1787 in Massachusetts?

3. Were the Articles of Confederation of 1777 useful for different purposes?
4. Who signed the text of the first U.S. Constitution that still exists today?
5. What was the result of the first U.S. Constitution?
6. Who was the executive power and the Commander-in-Chief of the armed forces of the country?
7. How many chambers did the legislative power consist of?
8. How long was the House of Representatives elected?
9. Who formulated the first amendments to the Constitution?
10. When were the first amendments to the Constitution made?
11. When was the Bill of Rights approved by the states?
12. When was the national flag of the United States formalized?
13. How can you describe the National Flag of the US?
14. When was the national emblem of the United States approved? How can you describe the national emblem?
15. What is the inscription in Latin: "E pluribus unum"?
16. When the U.S. anthem was officially adopted?
17. How is the U.S. anthem called?
18. Whom was the text of the anthem written by?
19. How many amendments were adapted to the Constitution?
20. What is the "Jeffersonian democracy"?
21. Whose name was associated with the American Dream?
22. What was the main idea of American Dream?
23. When was the dispute resolved by the "Missouri Compromise"?
24. Who was rudely expelled from the country? What was the reason?
25. Who defeated the British near New Orleans?

EXERCISE 2.16

Fill in the gaps with suitable words and expressions:

1. There was not enough labor in the ……... The cost of living increased unusually, and almost the entire settlement was burdened with debt.
2. The most formidable was the uprising of ……...in Massachusetts, led by farmer and former revolutionary army captain ……..... Several thousand people took part in it.
3. This was necessary due to the growing separatism of the states, which interfered with the development of ……..., ……...and inland navigation.
4. The Bill of Rights was approved by the states in ……..

5. Executive power was transferred to the ……...of the United States. He was elected for ……...years and was the head of state and government, as well as the ……...of the armed forces.
6. Congress had ……...power and consisted of ……...chambers. ……... – elected at meetings of local legislative bodies (much later, senators began to be elected by the population) for 6 years, but with the constant replacement of a third of the senators every ……...years.
7. The lower house – the House of ……... – was elected for ……...years in proportion to the number of voters in each state
8. The Constitution established the ……...Court – the highest court of ……... experienced lawyers appointed for life. For its time –- the ……...century, the U.S. Constitution was the most advanced and democratic.
9. On ……..., ……..., Congress approved the national flag of the United States. This day is now celebrated as Flag Day. It was decided that the flag would have ……...stripes (……...red, alternating with ……...white), and in the upper left corner on a blue field there would be ……...stars according to the number of colonies – states.
10. The national emblem of the United States was approved on July 20, ……... It depicts a bird - a predatory American eagle with spread wings, turning its head and holding ……...crossed arrows and an ……...branch in its paws.
11. The U.S. anthem was officially adopted on March 3, 1931. It is called “The ……...-……...Name”.
12. Over ……...years, only ……...amendments were adapted to it, giving it flexibility and compliance with the changing conditions of the country's life.
13. One of the leaders of the American ……..., a humanist and supporter of democracy, ……...adhered to progressive and even radical views and advocated the abolition of slavery.
14. The ……...Bank and protectionist tariffs were retained, and the construction of roads and canals was developed.
15. Already in ……...were heated discussions in Congress, in which the best speakers of supporters and opponents of slavery participated.
16. As a result, on September 9, 1820, the dispute was resolved by the “……...Compromise,” which was proposed by the “master of compromise” G. Clay.

17. To please the ……..., the United States adopted a more than cool position towards revolutionary ……....
18. They managed to defend ……...and ……..., and at the very end of ……..., General Jackson defeated the British near New Orleans.
19. The U.S. government refused to renew the ……...treaty of alliance with France, and when E.C.Genet tried to appeal to ……...public opinion, ignoring the government, he was rudely expelled from the country.
20. American privateers operated successfully at sea. In December ……...both sides decided to end the war by agreeing to return to the status quo.

EXERCISE 2.17

Find the mistakes and correct them:

1. The Congressional treasury was full; a group of officers developed a plan to establish a monarchy.
2. He confiscated and sold off the lands of the crown, large landowners - the British and the Algonquins.
3. The Articles of Confederation of 1887 were in no way consistent with these objectives. A detailed Constitution that served the interests of 1888 was needed. There were 45 delegates from all states.
4. Finally, on September 17, 1797, the majority of delegates - the so-called "Founding Fathers" - accepted a compromise project and signed the text of the first U.S. Constitution that still exists today.
5. The President had great powers - he appointed the government, ambassadors, and members of the supreme court. He governed with the help of secretaries (ministers) of the relevant departments accountable only to him, but subject to approval by Ministers.
6. Each state, regardless of size or population, sent three people to the Senate. The Senate confirmed appointments to various posts in the state, decided on foreign policy issues.
7. Only white men, starting from the age of 18, with a certain property status enjoyed the right to vote in the country.
8. Men, black slaves and free poor people sought voting rights. There were also restrictions for resident candidates.
9. But in 1799, at the request of the majority of the population of almost all states, J. Madison formulated the first amendments to the Constitution – the famous Bill of Rights.

10. The bill was approved by the states in 1771.
11. The beauty and intent of the flag was lost, and in 1918 it was decided that there would always be 13 stripes on the white flag, and the states joining the Union would be designated only by a new star.
12. On the eagle's chest is a shield with the colors of the national flag. In the bird's beak there is a ribbon with the inscription in Latin: E pluribus unum - "Out of many, one"; above the head there is a rosette with 11 stars.
13. The text was written by Francis S. Key in 1817 during the second war with England. The melody was the religious psalm "Anacreon in Paradise."
14. "Jeffersonian democracy" and after 1800, Americans rejected this policy, electing "president of the leader of the Republicans, 45-year-old Thomas Jefferson.
15. Jefferson's name was associated with the national emblems, a social ideal in which the equality of all people was combined with universal material prosperity.
16. The chief justice of the Federal Court, the largest judge in America at that time, J. Marshall, held a court decision in 1813, which turned into a principle of the American political and legal system.
17. Historians had every reason to call the 18 years of his reign "Franklin's democracy." The "era of good agreement" has arrived. The authority of the Republicans was high; their candidates occupied the White House almost without a fight.
18. At the center of the struggle was the issue of admitting the new Tata of Missouri into the Union and the fate of slavery in Missouri.
19. Slave ownership was established in Louisiana, Texas entered the Union as a slave state, and tiny England as a free state.
20. On July 14, 1798, the bourgeois Revolution was victorious in France.

2.4.2. Civil War. Military Conflict between North and South. Reconstruction

The First American Revolution, while freeing the country from the yoke of England, did not free the Negro slaves from the yoke of slave owners. Since then, as the United States developed, two economic systems, two labor systems that were so opposite, grew and strengthened on its territory that sooner or later they would have to face a most acute conflict. In the North, industry and

agriculture developed on the basis of capitalist relations and free labor. The South was dominated by a plantation economy based on the forced labor of Negro slaves. For some time, both systems could coexist, but sooner or later capitalism had to remove this obstacle.

This fundamental confrontation between the two labor systems was complemented by a moral and political question: about the freedom of blacks, about the inadmissibility of the institution of slavery in a civilized society. The laws of religion and human society were in blatant contradiction with slavery and demanded its abolition. There were other, more "tangible" material reasons for the abolition of slavery. The growing farming population of the North and Northwest demanded new land. It put forward the slogan "homestead", i.e. free distribution or sale at a low price of not yet occupied public lands in the West and South-West. But planters-slave owners also flocked there. The extremely low, primitive level of technology and agronomy, due to the forced labor of the slave, the dominance of monoculture, mainly "King Cotton" and tobacco quickly depleted the land. To increase production, slave owners needed new slaves and new lands. The lands were located nearby - in the West. It was there that the interests of slavery (American "feudalism") and capitalism collided. The question arose as to whether Western lands would be distributed to farmers, or whether they will turn into slave plantations. Added to this problem opposing approaches to the issue of customs tariffs. Industrialists and traders of the North sought to "close" the American market to foreign goods through the introduction of high import duties. This would give scope for the development of domestic production. Southern planters who exported cotton to England and other countries received high-quality industrial products in return and, naturally, sought to maintain low duties.

The attitude of the North and the South to the so-called internal improvements, which meant the construction of railways and dirt roads, canals, communications facilities, etc., at the expense of the federal government, was also different. Slave owners oriented towards external export needed all of this. But industrialists and farmers considered "improvements" simply obligatory for the development of the country's economy. All this prepared the inevitable clash between North and South.

2.4.3. Constitutional war

The hostilities began with a great defeat for the northerners. After unsuccessful attempts to persuade the southerners to return to the Union, McClellan's army moved to the capital of the Confederacy, Richmond, located just 100 km from the U.S. capital. In July 1861, the northerners set out on a

campaign, hoping that Richmond would become an easy target. The offensive was carried out carefree and extremely disorganized. The army was accompanied by crowds of Washingtonians who wanted to see the "beautiful war." But, not having traveled even forty kilometers, the northerners unexpectedly came across the enemy, who had taken up a position near the Ball Rene stream near the town of Mananas. A battle took place here. The northern army was defeated. The troops began to flee in panic, forgetting about artillery and convoys. A year later, at the same place, the northerners were defeated again.

2.4.4. Revolutionary war

The almost continuous defeats of the army caused great indignation in the North. The people demanded to take decisive action - the defeat of slavery. The government had to resort to vigorous measures: it strengthened the command of the army, confiscated the property of the rebels, and suppressed the agents of the southerners in the North, which received the strange nickname among the people "sweet heads". Military conscription was introduced. However, not all of these steps were met with approval at Seyer. Particularly strong discontent was caused among the masses by mobilization into the army on conditions that allowed the rich to buy their way out of conscription. Spontaneous riots broke out. Perhaps that's when the president's bitter joke was born. When the northern priest said to him that God is on our side, Lincoln replied: "God is always on the side of the right, but I would like the people to be on the side of God."

Lincoln's government, under pressure from the people, despite hesitation and resistance from outside, carried out a number of acts that decisively changed the nature and course of the war. On May 20, 1862, the Homestead Law was adopted, which resolved the agrarian issue democratically: every American, by paying 10 dollars, could receive a plot of 160 acres and, by cultivating it for five years, become the full owner. The popular masses increased their support for the government. September 22, 1862.

Lincoln published a preliminary Proclamation abolishing slavery in the rebel states effective January 1, 1863. On January 1, 1863, Lincoln signed final Proclamation. The blacks were freed without any ransom, but also without land. Nothing was said about their civil rights. Slavery persisted in the so-called Border States (Missouri, Kentucky, Western Virginia), which did not join the rebellion. For all its limitations, Lincoln's Proclamation was an act of the greatest significance. She gave freedom to millions of blacks and removed the shame of slavery from America. Normally modest, Lincoln said: "I know for a fact that the name associated with this document will never be forgotten."

In February 1865, the U.S. Congress adopted the Thirteenth Amendment to the Federal Constitution, which abolished slavery throughout the country.

Many hundreds of thousands of farmers, more than 750 thousand workers and artisans went to fight against slavery. 180 thousand blacks were drafted into the army. They defended their newly acquired freedom with great enthusiasm and courage.

(**For further information about the Civil War and Reconstruction. see: the *Appendix 2.4***)

EXERCISE 2.18

Try to explain the following concepts:

1. Civil War . …….
2. Reconstruction . ……
3. American Revolution. ……..
4. pamphlets . ……
5. Uncle Tom's Cabin. ……..
6. the Republican Party . ……..
7. congressmen. ……
8. Constitutional war. ……
9. Confederacy. …….
10. Revolutionary war . ……..
11. proclamation . ……..
12. Thirteenth Amendment . ……...
13. abolishing slavery . ……..
14. the Tsarist government . ……
15. consumption. …….

EXERCISE 2.19

Answer the following questions:

1. What is the history of the famous “Uncle Tom's Cabin”?
2. Who is the author of “Uncle Tom's Cabin”?
3. What is the role of abolitionist groups?
4. Which party took the place of the Whigs?
5. When did the Democrats split into three factions?
6. What was the reason of the Constitutional war?
7. What is the famous saying by Lincoln about God and people?
8. When was the Homestead Law adopted?
9. What is the role of the Homestead Law in the agrarian issue?
10. When did Lincoln sign final Proclamation?

11. When did the U.S. Congress adopt the Thirteenth Amendment to the Federal Constitution? What is its significance?
12. Who were the capable generals of that period?
13. Was there any result of the sale agreement with Russia?
14. When and where was Lincoln shot?
15. How long did Reconstruction last? What was its role in the Second American Revolution?

EXERCISE 2.20

Find and correct the mistakes:

1. The First American Revolution, while freeing the country from the yoke of England, did not free the Australian slaves from the yoke of slave owners.
2. This fundamental confrontation between the two labor systems was complemented by a moral and political question: about the freedom of whites, about the importance of the institution of slavery in a civilized society.
3. Southern planters who exported vegetables to England and other countries received high-quality industrial products in return and, naturally, sought to maintain high duties.
4. Anti-slavery articles and pamphlets by famous writers G. Thoreau, R. Hildreth, H. Lord and others were distributed in the country.
5. An unknown 45-year-old woman, who lived for a long time on the border with slave-holding states wrote a book that shocked literally all of America and the rest of the world.
6. Revolutionaries organized an "underground railroad," risking their freedom and even their lives, transported them to the North or Canada runaway slaves from the South.
7. With a detachment of 22 people (including 5 blacks), on October 16, 1759, he captured the arsenal in the town of Harpers Ferry.
8. Lincoln was involved in the political life of Massachusetts, where he lived and became congressman.
9. McClellan's army moved to the capital of the Confederacy, Richmond, located just 50 km from the U.S. capital.
10. In July 1841, the northerners set out on a campaign, hoping that Richmond would become an easy target.

EXERCISE 2.21

Fill in the gaps with the suitable words and expressions:

1. On May 20, ……., the Homestead Law was adopted, which resolved the agrarian issue democratically: every American, by paying

……..dollars, could receive a plot of ……..acres and, by cultivating it for five years, become the full owner.

2. The popular masses increased their support for the government. September 22, ……...
3. ……..said: “I know for a fact that the name associated with this document will never be forgotten.”
4. In February ……..., the U.S. Congress adopted the Thirteenth Amendment to the Federal Constitution, which abolished slavery throughout the country.
5. Many hundreds of thousands of farmers, more than ……..thousand workers and artisans went to fight against slavery.
6. ……..thousand blacks were drafted into the army. They defended their newly acquired freedom with great enthusiasm and courage.
7. The appearance of two Russian squads in New York and ……..was understood in the United States, and throughout the world, as a gesture friendly to the Lincoln government.
8. The leadership of the ……..., seeing that its internal and international situation had deteriorated sharply, decided on an adventure and sent General R. Lee's army to Pennsylvania and ……...
9. They received no support, but met with an army of northerners. July 1, ……..a bloody battle took place at Gettysburg.
10. On April 14, ……..., at the Washington Theater, the ardent supporter of slave owners, actor Booth, entered the presidential box, which, for some reason, was not guarded, and shot Lincoln in the back of the head.
11. There, in an empty courthouse, on April 9, almost exactly four years after the war began, ……..surrendered to Grant.
12. He became famous in the country due to a dispute that took place in 1858 with a pro-slavery democrat, a wealthy planter and brave Colonel St. ……...
13. The leadership of the Confederacy, seeing that its internal and international situation had deteriorated sharply, decided on an adventure and sent General R. Lee's army to Pennsylvania and ……...
14. In the North, industry and agriculture developed on the basis of capitalist relations and ……..labor.
15. The extremely low, primitive level of technology and agronomy, due to the forced labor of the slave, the dominance of monoculture, mainly “……..” and ……..quickly depleted the land.

EXERCISE 2.22

Mark *true* or *false* and correct the *false* statements.

1. At the end of the 50s, there were about 3 thousand abolitionist societies, uniting more than 350 thousand people.
2. Abraham Lincoln was elected the fourteenth President of the United States.
3. Lincoln's main task saw the limitation of slavery to existing territory, which doomed it to a slow, inevitable, but, as many hoped, peaceful death.
4. When the northern priest said to him that God is on our side, Lincoln replied: "God is always on the side of the right, but I would like the people to be on the side of God."
5. The attitude of the North and the South to the so-called internal improvements, which meant the construction of railways and dirt roads, canals, communications facilities, etc., at the expense of the federal government, was also different.
6. Lincoln published a preliminary Proclamation abolishing slavery in the rebel states effective January 1, 1853. On January 1, 1853, Lincoln signed final Proclamation. The blacks were freed without any ransom, but also without land.
7. Soon, the army of General W. Sherman moved from Mississippi to the shores of the Atlantic Ocean. In December 1872, Sherman's troops, which included many blacks, captured the oceanfront city of Savannah.
8. The sale agreement was signed on March 20, 1858 on very favorable terms for the Americans: they received a huge territory of 775 thousand square meters. miles of this for 8.2 million dollars in gold.
9. In April 1865, the armies of Grant and Sherman took the capital of the Confederacy after a long and bloody siege.
10. A month earlier, on March 4, Lincoln assumed the presidency for the second time. He prevailed in the elections of 1852 over the Republican candidate, his former commander in chief, J. McClellan.
11. Three troops of President Lincoln's wife died for the Confederacy. Relatives of J. Davis fought on the side of the northerners.
12. This long and complex process was called Reconstruction and lasted from 1877 to 1895. It became an inevitable stage of the Second American Revolution.

EXERCISE 2.23
Match the words and their explanations:

1. The Pilgrim	A) the highest class in certain societies, typically comprising people of noble birth holding hereditary titles and offices.
2. colonist	B) the capital or chief city of a country or region.
3. religion	C) a member of a government-backed group that settles in a new country or region.
4. aristocracy	D) a large building where raw materials or manufactured goods may be stored prior to their distribution for sale.
5. triangular trade	E) person who journeys to a sacred place for religious reasons
6. warehouse	F) the belief in and worship of a superhuman power or powers, especially a God or gods.
7. revolution	G) an administrative leader and head of a polity or political region,
8. metropolis	H) three-legged economic model and trade route that was predicated on the transatlantic trade of enslaved people.
9. disease	I) relating to or denoting indigenous peoples of North, Central, and South America, especially those of North America.
10. governor	J) forcible overthrow of a government or social order, in favour of a new system.
11. shipbuilding	K) isorder of structure or function in a human, animal, or plant, especially one that has a known cause and a distinctive group of symptoms, signs, or anatomical changes.
12. Indians	L) the principles or conduct of a loyalist : display of loyalty.
13. Citizen	M) a legally recognized subject or national of a state or commonwealth, either native or naturalized.
14. Rebel	N) the building of large sea-going vessels, usually of steel although other materials can also be used, including wood and composites.
15. loyalism	O) union or association formed for mutual benefit, especially between countries or organizations.
16. alliance	P) person who rises in opposition or armed resistance against an established government or leader.

EXERCISE 2.24

Choose the right variant.

1. In 1777, "Articles of Confederation" adopted by ……., gave the states greater rights, even to the point of declaring war.
   A) the President B) the Congress
   C) the Senate D) the House of Representatives
2. At a meeting in June ……, Virginia delegate Richard Lee stood and read the historic decision.
   A) 1776 B) 1777 C) 1778 D) 1779
3. But in 1789, J. Madison formulated the first amendments to …….– the famous Bill of Rights.
   A) the Decision B) the Confederation
   C) the Amendments D) the Constitution
4. The bill was approved by the states in ……...
   A) 1781 B) 1771 C) 1791 D) 1795
5. The text was written in……during the second war with England. The melody was the religious psalm "Anacreon in Paradise."
   A) 1814 B) 1815 C) 1816 D) 1819
6. A special decree of the king prohibited Americans from settling beyond the Allegheny Mountains.
   A) Rocky Mountains B) Sand Mountains
   C) the Allegheny Mountains D) Boston Mountains
7. The port of Auston was closed and blockaded, Massachusetts was deprived of the right of self-government, and citizens were deprived of freedom of assembly.
   A) Massachusetts B) Illinois C) Texas D) New Jersey
8. On April 9, 1775, the British were subjected to massive shelling near Lexington and, having lost ……. people killed and wounded.
   A) 237 B) 273 C) 238 D) 283
9. They launched military operations at sea such as ……., so that the British were even afraid of an invasion of their islands.
   A) Gibraltar B) Rocky C) Boston D) Ontario
10. July 4, ……. Congress adopted the Declaration of Independence.
    A) 1775 B) 1774 C) 1776 D) 1779
11. The President had great powers – he appointed the government, ambassadors, and members of ……..
    A) the Senate B) the Congress
    C) the House of Representatives D) the Supreme Court

12. Each state, regardless of size or population, sent …….. people to the Senate.
    A) three B) two C) five D) four
13. Jefferson's name was associated with the ……., a social ideal in which the equality of all people was combined with universal material prosperity.
    A) Pluribus Unum B) Annuit Coeptis
    C) American society D) American Dream
14. The chief justice of the Supreme Court held a court decision in ……, which turned into a principle of the American political and legal system.
    A) 1803 B) 1808 C) 1813 D) 1818
15. Most of the …… helped England, which promised to preserve their lands.
    A) Indians B) Spanish C) Italians D) Eskimos
16. The British defeated the colonists in a battle called the "…….".
    A) Mayflower B) Yupik C) Anacreon D) Battle of Bunker Hill.
17. On ……., the majority of delegates – the so-called "Founding Fathers" - accepted and signed the text of the first U.S. Constitution.
    A) On September 17, 1787 B) On September 17, 1797
    C) On December 17, 1797 D) On December 17, 1787
18. Historians had every reason to call the ……. of his reign "Jeffersonian democracy."
    A) 6 years B) 8 years C) 7 years D) 5 years

EXERCİSE 2.25

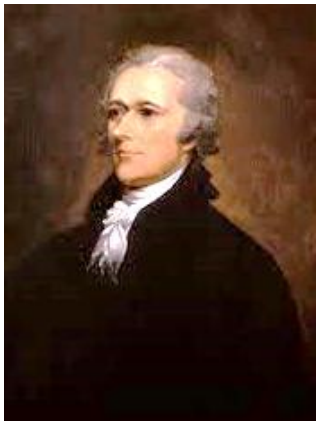
Answer the following questions about the three branches of government.

Questions	the Legislative	the Executive	the Judicial
1. What does it consist of?			
2. What are its responsibilities?			
3. How are they appointed?			
4.What are its functions?			

EXERCISE 2.26 (For self-research)

Find out who is on the picture and answer the following questions:

1. Why do we call him one of the Founding Fathers?
2. What was his main ability in writing literature?
3. What were his actions taken against slavery?
4. Which bill is printed with his face on it?



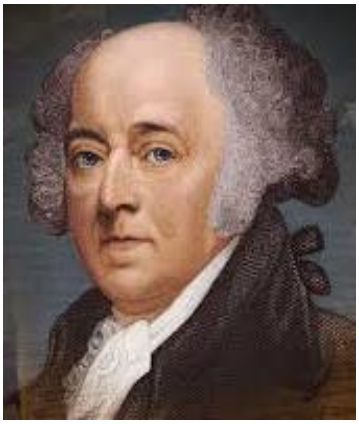
5. When did he join the army?
6. What was the reason of his joining the army?
7. Who asked him to join his staff?
8. How long did he served as G.Washington's?
9. How did he help him G.Washington?
10. When was he chosen to serve in the Congress?
11. What did he create to support the economy?
12. What was the role of the First Bank dealing with money?
13. What was his attitude to slavery?
14. Where did he witness cruelty against slaves?
15. What is "The Grange" famous for?
16. What was his financial activity? In 1789 he was appointed the first secretary of the treasury.
17. How can you describe his attitude to Boston Tea Party? He publicly defended Boston colonists.
18. When did he die?
19. What was the reason of his death?
20. How did he gain popularity in the 21st century?

EXERCISE 2.27 (For self-research)
Find out who is on the picture and answer the following questions:

1. Why do we call him Father of his Country?
2. How can you briefly describe his achievements?
3. How did the Americans immortalize his name?
4. Who nominated Washington as the first Commander-in-Chief?
5. Why did the delegates support his nomination?
6. Which battles did he win?
7. What forced him to return to New York?
8. What was his attitude towards enslaved people?
9. How can you estimate his role in writing the U.S. Constitution?
10. What was his main foreign policy achievement?

EXERCISE 2.28 (For self-research)

Find out who is on the picture and answer the following questions:



1. What is his role in U.S. history?
2. When was he elected to the Massachusetts delegation?
3. When did he gain the reputation as "the Atlas of independence"?
4. How can you count his main contributions?
5. What position was he first elected for?
6. What did he write to Jefferson?

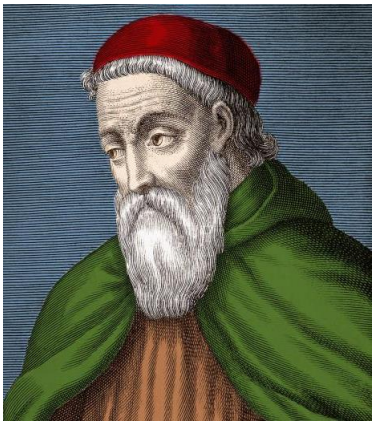
EXERCISE 2.29 (For self-research)

Find out who is on the picture and answer the following questions:

1. What was his role in history?
2. What led this discovery to?
3. Why was his role in this discovery controversial?
4. Can you name the ships of the first voyage?.
5. What was the purpose of his second trip?
6. When was he taken prisoner?
7. What was the goal of the final trip?
8. When do Americans celebrate Columbus Day?
9. When was if made a federal holiday?
10. How can you estimate his contributions?

EXERCISE 2.30 (For self-research)

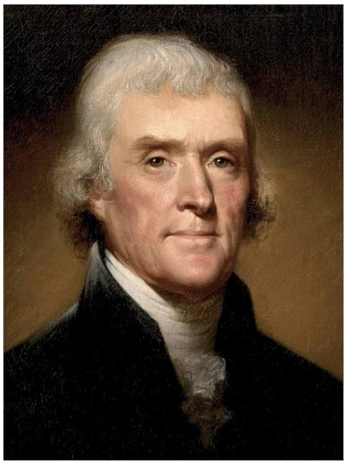
Find out who is on the picture and answer the following questions:



1. What was his role in history?
2. How did he receive his education?
3. When did he meet Christopher Columbus?
4. What was his duties as a pilot on one of the ships going south for exploration?
5. Why was he sure that they had not discovered India?
6. Whom did he write first after returning to Portugal in September 1502?

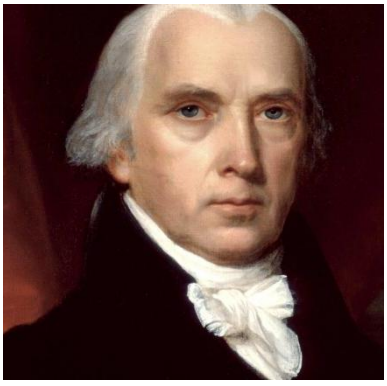
7. How did he call the new land they discovered?
8. When was his last voyage?
9. Who referred to the southern hemisphere as “America” first?
10. What was his legacy?

EXERCISE 2.31 (For self-research)
Find out who is on the picture and answer the following questions:



1. What was his role in history?
2. When did he serve as a governor?
3. What was his role in writing the Declaration of Independence?
4. Where did he work as an American ambassador?
5. When did he serve as the first secretary of state?
6. When did he stand as the Republican candidate for president?
7. What was the result of these elections?
8. When did he win the elections?
9. How long did he serve as the President?
10. When and how did he purchase the Louisiana territory?

EXERCISE 2.32 (For self-research)
Find out who is on the picture and answer the following questions:



1. What was his role in history?
2. Can you count his contributions in Virginia Plan?
3. What was the importance of the Virginia Plan?
4. When was he elected to the U.S. House of Representatives?
5. How can you estimate his serves in the House of Representatives?
6. When was he elected as the fourth President of the United States?
7. What was the relationship between the U.S. and Great Britain during his presidency?
8. What was his role in the American Colonization Society?

EXERCISE 2.33

Write the dates from the box.

1493	1502	1492	1692	1773	1499	1781	1775	1776	1777	1781

1. In ……., during Vedovskie trials 19 women and relatives were executed or died in prison.
2. In May ……..,, Columbus organized the fourth voyage on four sailboats.
3. On April 9, ……..,, the British were subjected to massive shelling near Lexington and, having lost 273 people.
4. Almost all the delegates of the First Congress again gathered in Philadelphia for the Second Continental Congress in ……..,.
5. In ……..,, 45-year-old Amerigo set off on a long journey himself.
6. On September 25, ……..,, Columbus led a new expedition, which already consisted of a serious fleet.
7. In December ……..,the famous "Boston Tea Party" took place.
8. In …….. Amerigo joined the Spanish naval service, participated in the equipment of the second and third expeditions of Christopher Columbus.
9. In ……. the "Articles of Confederation" adopted by Congress gave the states greater rights, even to the point of declaring war.
10. July 4, ……..,Congress adopted the Declaration of Independence.
11. The British were blocked from the sea by the French fleet in October 19, ……..

EXERCISE 2.34

Fill in the chart:

Purpose of the establishment	Colony
religious freedom	
political reasons	
economic reasons	
to become richer	

EXERCİSE 2.35

Find out the exact year of the given event and number the following facts in correct time order.

1. During Vedovskie trials 19 women and relatives were executed or died in prison.

2. The British were subjected to massive shelling near Lexington.
3. The delegates of the First Congress gathered for the Second Continental Congress.
4. Amerigo Vespucci set off on a long journey himself.
5. Columbus led a new expedition, which already consisted of a serious fleet.
6. The famous "Boston Tea Party" took place.
7. Amerigo Vespucci participated in the second and third expeditions of Christopher Columbus.
8. The "Articles of Confederation" adopted by Congress gave the states greater rights.
9. Congress adopted the Declaration of Independence.
10. The British were blocked from the sea by the French fleet.

EXERCISE 2.36

Make a self-research about interesting features of the U.S. history. Use the following key words:

Virginia, Boston, Mayflower, Thanksgiving, Oregon , Rhode Island, New Hampshire, Boston Tea Party, Battle of Bunker Hill, Whigs, Tories, Declaration, sabotage, constitution**,** the Congressional treasury, captain Daniel Shays, Founding Fathers, executive power, Upper Senate, enlightenment, monarchy, etc.

EXERCISE 2.37

Find out:

a) Some interesting facts about the brave achievements of the leaders of Revolutionary War.
b) Reasons of England's failure in colonialism policy.
c) Information about one period of history in your country. Make notes on the important facts. Compare these facts to the same period of U.S. history.

EXERCISE 2.38

For self-research:

a) Work in groups of three or more. Make sentences or tell some facts about the Exploration and Colonization period of American history.
b) Find out about one period of history in your country. Make notes on the important facts. Compare these facts to the same period of U.S. history.
c) Find out more information about native tribes; make a comparison of their old and modern lifestyle.

MODULE 3

U.S. POLITICAL SYSTEM

3.1. How is the Government structured?

The U.S. Constitution layouts the framework of the Government. Power in the USA is not concentrated on any one person or governing body. As written in the Constitution, power is shared between the national government (often referred to as the federal government) and each of the U.S. state governments.

What is the U.S. federal government?

The U.S. federal government functions are definitely indicated in the Constitution. For example, the federal government has the right to make decisions on the following: the military, all federal taxes, printing money, regulations on trade, etc. All the functions that are not indicated in the Constitution as a federal power are supposed to be a state power.

What is state government?

The United States of America is a union of 50 states, each having own legal standing and authority independent of the federal government. This means that each state has the right to make decisions in those areas not decided by the federal government.

For example, each state can have its own laws on the following: crime and punishment, gun control, ages for marriage, driving and education, etc.

The separation of powers is the term used to describe the division or sharing of powers between the Executive (President), Legislature (Congress) and Judiciary (Supreme Court).

The Framers of the American Constitution (in 1789) went to great lengths to ensure that political power would not be centered within a single field of the national government. Therefore, there is a system of checks and balances to control power.

For example:

the President nominates ambassadors and members of the US Cabinet, selects federal judges and negotiates international treaties, but all are subject to approval by the Senate;

the Constitution specifies that only Congress has the power to declare war, but the President is Commander-in-Chief of the Armed Forces;

the President can suggest new laws but it is Congress which makes the law;

the President can veto bills (new laws passed by Congress) but Congress, under certain conditions, can overturn a presidential veto, etc.

(**For further information about the political system in the United States see: the *Appendix 3.1***)

EXERCISE 3.1

Try to define the following words and expressions:

1. federal government……...
2. military…….
3. taxes……
4. state government ……..
5. Executive power……...
6. Legislative power ……
7. Judiciary……
8. U.S. Cabinet…….
9. House of Representatives……
10. commander-in-chief ……
11. the Senate ……
12. Vice-President ……

EXERCISE 3.2

Answer the following questions:

1. What is the highest judicial authority in the United States?
2. How many judges comprises the Supreme Court?
3. Who is the highest executive body in the USA?
4. What positions can the President take?
5. Who is the second person in the country after the President?
6. When was the Constitution adopted?
7. What are the main powers of the judicial branch?
8. Who appoints the members of the judicial branch?
9. Who can veto bills? Who can overturn a veto?
10. What kind of laws can each state have?
11. What is the U.S. federal government?
12. Where are the U.S. federal government powers stated?
13. What types of decisions can the federal government make?
14. What is a state power?

EXERCISE 3.3

Fill in the gaps with the suitable words and expressions:

1. The USA federal government powers are clearly stated in the US …….
2. The federal government has the right to make decisions on the ……., all federal ……., printing ……., regulations on …….between states, etc.
3. The highest judicial authority is the …….. It consists of ……., one of them is elected ……..
4. The highest executive body in the country is the President of the US He is not only the head of state, but also the …….of its armed forces.
5. The President can suggest new laws but it is …….which the makes law.
6. In accordance with the Constitution adopted in ……., most of the powers of government were transferred to the …….government of the United States.
7. The President can …….bills, but Congress, under certain conditions, can …….a presidential veto, etc.
8. The separation of powers indicates the division or sharing of powers between the Executive (…….), Legislature (…….) and Judiciary (…….).
9. the President nominates …….and members of the USA ……., selects federal …….and negotiates international treaties, but all are to be approved by the …….;
10. Typically, the US…….acts as an appellate court, but in some cases it acts as a …….court.

3.2. Features of the U.S. Legislative Branch

To describe briefly, the legislative branch in the country under study is represented by parliament, which consists of two chambers. The first is the Senate, and the second is the House of Representatives. This body in the USA is called Congress.

3.2.1. Structure of the U.S. Congress

As mentioned above, Congress consists of two chambers, each of which performs a number of tasks assigned to it.

1. Senate. It is the upper house and acts as a representative of the states. The Senate is elected according to a majoritarian system, where senators are elected by a relative majority of votes.

2. The House of Representatives is a body that represents the interests of all the people. It includes 435 congressmen who are elected according to a majoritarian system, and their term of office is 2 years.

These bodies of the U.S. political system are the main ones in the field of issuing new legislative acts.

Powers and Functions of the United States Congress

The bicameral Parliament of the U.S. is a legislative body. The main powers of Congress include:

- ❖ regulation of the state taxation system;
- ❖ work in the field of trade with foreign countries;
- ❖ regulation of trade issues between U.S. states;
- ❖ decisions regarding the declaration of war;
- ❖ regulation of issues of the formation and activities of the armed forces;
- ❖ allocation of funds for the maintenance of the armed forces.

In addition, the Senate makes decisions on the appointment of Ministers, judges in the Supreme Court, and makes final decisions regarding impeachment. Both the upper and lower houses convene committees and commissions that are important to the work of Congress and sometimes to the entire state. Parliament also works with the economic sphere in the country. It is from deputies that proposals on the distribution of public funds come.

(**For further information about the U.S., the U.S. House of Representatives, the Senate, and the U.S. Congress see: the *Appendix 3.2,* the *Appendix 3.3,* the *Appendix 3.4,* the *Appendix 3.5***)

EXERCISE 3.4

Mark *true* or *false,* correct the *false* statements:

1. Senate is the upper house and acts as a representative of the states.
2. The Senate is elected according to a majoritarian system, where senators are elected by a relative minority of votes.
3. The House of Representatives includes 435 congressmen who are elected according to a majoritarian system, and their term of office is 2 years.
4. The Senate is the upper house of the U.S. Congress. It has 90 members, two from each of the 50 states.
5. The period of service of each elected senator is 4 years. One third of the senators are re-elected every year.

6. A citizen having reached the age of 30 and living in the state that is his constituency for at least the last 9 years can apply for a seat in the U.S. Senate.
7. In addition, the Senate makes decisions on the appointment of Ministers, judges in the Supreme Court, and makes final decisions regarding impeachment.
8. Each state has three senators who have equal weight when voting for certain decisions.
9. The President of the U.S. Senate is the Vice Representative of the country, but his participation in voting is limited only to those cases when the votes of senators are equally divided.
10. There are currently 47 Democratic representatives, 51 Republican representatives, and 2 senators in the United States Senate, serving independently from the country's two major parties.
11. The U.S. Senate plays a great role in government decision-making because its members are older than those who work in the House of Representatives, they are elected for a longer term and are renewed by a third every two years.
12. The number of seats in the House remains unchanged and amounts to 345 seats, although by decision of Congress the number of state representatives in this body of the U.S. government can be adjusted.
13. Each state representative serves a four-year term and can be re-elected an unlimited number of times.
14. In thirty-four states, this legislative body is called the "state legislature."
15. In nineteen states it is called the General Assembly.

EXERCISE 3.5

Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. The U.S. House of Representatives is headed by a Senate, who is elected directly by the members of the House.
2. The U.S. House of Lords has many committees that deal with such issues as agriculture, military affairs, education and labor, energy and trade, natural resources, small business, housing administration, and so on.
3. The U.S. House of Representatives is being formed on more democratic principles than the upper house of Senate, that is, the Senate.
4. Members of the lower house of the U.S. Parliament are usually called senators, and they always interact closely with their constituents.
5. There are also such isolated names as the Representative Assembly and the General Council.

6. The majority of representation from ethnic minority groups is members of the republican Party (73%).
7. The terms of office of representatives of the legislative assembly also differ. They usually last three or four years.
8. The U.S. legislative sessions are much shorter than those held in the U.S. Congress. State legislative assemblies resolve the backlog of issues within 3-4 months of work.

3.3. Executive authorities in the USA

The U.S. political system presupposes the presence of executive authorities. Unlike many other states, in the United States, executive power is exercised by the President. It is independent and uncontrolled by Congress. Together with the President, the Vice-President of the country is also elected.

3.3.1. President of the USA

The President in the United States is elected for a period of 4 years. Moreover, the same person can receive this position for no more than 2 consecutive terms. The competence of the executive authority includes:

- approval of legislative decisions: executive orders, proclamations, reorganization plans, etc.;
- appointment to senior government positions;
- in the field of politics, conducting appointments of ambassadors, concluding peace treaties, executive appointments.

The politician who holds the position of President is the main one in the foreign policy apparatus, and therefore can make a large number of decisions without the participation of the Senate.

3.3.2. Duties of the U.S. President

The President of the United States of America is the head of state and head of the executive branch. Under his leadership is the U.S. Federal Government, as well as the country's ground forces and naval forces. The President if free to block any bills adopted by the U.S. Congress. This is his veto power.

In accordance with Article 2 of the American Constitution, all executive power at the federal level is transferred to the President of the United States. The presidential term is 4 years. To prevent usurpation of power, the U.S.

Constitution prohibits the election of the same person to the presidency more than twice.

The U.S. presidential election takes place in December, and he takes office on January 20 of the following year after taking the presidential oath. Such a long period of time is required so that the head of state can decide on the candidacies of various officials representing the executive branch of the country.

US Presidents, in accordance with the Constitution, have an extensive set of powers with which they deal with issues such as national security, international relations and interaction between the legislative and executive branches. In general, the powers of the President can be divided into constitutional, implied (meant, but not written in the Constitution), and delegated by Congress.

The U.S. President ensures the security of the country as the commander-in-chief of the country's army and navy. In addition, he is the leader for all police officers of each state when they are called into active service by the U.S. This also includes a number of emergency powers of the president. He can declare and terminate a state of emergency, as well as carry out various measures to restore law and order, suppress riots and ensure the work of federal agencies, including using the forces of the army and the national guard.

In the field of foreign policy, U.S. presidents are involved in concluding international agreements, appointing ambassadors, consuls and other authorized government representatives in other countries and international organizations. In addition, the president receives ambassadors and other authorized representatives of other countries.

To create counterbalances between the legislative and executive branches of government of the country, the president is vested with a number of specific powers. For example, in relation to the judiciary, he can grant reprieves and pardon criminals who have committed crimes against the United States (the exception here is cases of conviction during impeachment). In particular, U.S. presidents can decide on amnesties. The president also appoints Supreme Court justices and other federal judges, although he does so with the approval of the Senate.

In relation to Congress, he has the right to convene one or both of its chambers for extraordinary sessions. If disagreements arise about postponing the date of the meeting, then the final decision on this issue is made by the president. He also periodically sends various messages to each chamber of Congress, including programs of legislative activities for the next year.

However, the greatest volume of powers of the U.S. President is concentrated precisely in granting him full executive power. In this capacity, the president manages a huge executive apparatus and makes decisions on the appointment of state officials. In two situations he can appoint supreme officials

without the approval of congressmen: if this power is given to him by law and if a vacancy occurs between sessions of Congress. In the second case, the official appointed by the president serves until the end of the next session.

The process for removing officials is not spelled out in the U.S. Constitution. In practice, all decisions on these issues are made personally by the president, unless the constitution and laws directly provide for other procedures.

(**For the list of the U.S. Presidents see: the *Appendix 3.6***)

Today, all U.S. presidents are elected by direct secret ballot of citizens. This election system was formalized in 1789 after the U.S. Constitution was adopted by all thirteen states that then existed in 1787. The reason for the adoption of its own constitution was the victory in the American War of Independence. As a result, Great Britain recognized the independence of the States, and its army units left the territory of the country that was now no longer a colony.

The first on the list of U.S. presidents is George Washington, who directly took part in the War of Independence and is considered the founding father of the country. In fact, it was he who created the institution of the presidency in the United States during his two terms, which lasted 8 years. Interestingly, George Washington did not belong to any party. There was no longer any precedent in U.S. history for a non-partisan person to lead the country.

(**For further information about the Vice President and his functions see: the *Appendix 3.7***)

EXERCISE 3.6

Answer the following questions:

1. Whom is the executive power exercised by?
2. How long is the President in the United States elected for?
3. Who is the commander-in-chief of the country's army and navy?
4. When do the President and the Vice President of the United States take office?
5. What does the U.S. president can decide on?
6. Whom does the president appoint?
7. Who manages a huge executive apparatus and makes decisions on the appointment of state officials?
8. Whom do the citizens elect in parallel with the President?
9. Which party does the vice president represent?
10. What are the main requirements to be elected to the post of Vice President?
11. Is there a limit for presidential election (to be elected) for the same person?

12. What can you tell about the first president of US?
13. Which party did George Washington belong to?
14. When did the Whig party exist?
15. What happened to the Whig Party after its disappearance?

EXERCISE 3.7

Mark *true* or *false,* correct the *false* statements:

1. Unlike many other states, in the United States, executive power is exercised by the President. It is dependent and controlled by Congress.
2. Together with the President, the Vice-President of the country is also elected.
3. The President in the United States is elected for a term of 5 years.
4. The competence of the executive authority includes: approval of legislative decisions: executive orders, proclamations, reorganization plans, etc.;
5. The President at his discretion can delegate to the Senate a number of public duties, which he will carry out on behalf of the immediate head of state.
6. The Vice President of the United States takes office on the same day as the President, namely January 10 of the year following the election year.
7. The vice president takes an oath of office, and it is specified in the constitution.
8. In the field of foreign policy, U.S. presidents are involved in concluding international agreements, appointing ambassadors, consuls and other authorized government representatives in other countries and international organizations.
9. In particular, U.S. presidents can decide on amnesties. The president also appoints Supreme Court justices and other federal judges, although he does so with the advice and consent of the Senate.
10. However, the greatest volume of powers of the U.S. President is concentrated precisely in granting him full legislative power.
11. In this capacity, the president manages a huge executive apparatus and makes decisions on the appointment of Houses of Representatives.
12. The President has no right to block any bills adopted by the U.S. Congress.
13. In accordance with Article 2 of the American Constitution, all executive power at the federal level is transferred to the President of the United States.
14. The U.S. presidential election takes place in October, and he takes office on November 20 after taking the presidential oath.

EXERCISE 3.8

Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. US Presidents, in accordance with the Senate, have an extensive set of powers.
2. This election system was formalized in 1799 after the U.S. Constitution was adopted by all thirteen states that then existed in 1707.
3. The reason for the adoption of its own constitution was the victory in the American War of Independence.
4. France recognized the independence of the States, and its army units left the territory of the country that was now no longer a colony.
5. The election of the U.S. Vice President takes place in another day with the presidential elections.
6. The vice president is chosen from different political parties as the head of state himself. However, according to the constitution, the second person in the country must be chosen from another state.
7. A person elected to the post of Vice President is subject to the same requirements as those applying for the presidency. He must be over 25 years of age, born in the United States, and have resided in this country for at least 12 years.
8. While the number of presidential terms in the United States is limited to three, the vice president can be elected an unlimited number of times.
9. Previously, in the United States, the posts of president and vice president were held by people from the same political parties.
10. George Washington belonged to the Republican party. There was no longer any precedent in U.S. history for a non-partisan person to lead the country.

EXERCISE 3.9

Fill in the gaps with the suitable words and expressions:

1. However, if you look at the list of all U.S. presidents, you can see how in the …….. century representatives of the Whig party were elected head of the country several times in a row.
2. Whig party existed from …….. to …….. . After her disappearance, the former members of the Whig Party who remained in politics were divided into those who joined the …….. and …….. .
3. According to his formal functions, the …….. of the United States is the head of the Senate.

4. However, in fact, the …….. only has the casting vote in the event that the votes of the senators are divided in half.
5. Each candidate for the post of President of the United States goes to the polls together with the person who will hold the …….. position under him.
6. The vice president is chosen from the …….. political party as the head of state himself.
7. U.S. Presidents, in accordance with the …….. , have an extensive set of powers with which they deal with issues such as …….. security, international …….. and interaction between the …….. and …….. branches.
8. In the field of foreign policy, U.S. presidents are involved in concluding international …….. , appointing …….. , consuls and other authorized government …….. in other countries and international organizations.
9. The president also appoints …….. justices and other federal judges, although he does so with the advice and consent of the …….. .

(**For further information about the U.S. State Department see: the *Appendix 3.8***)

EXERCISE 3.10

Answer the following questions:

1. What are the main divisions of the State Department?
2. Who nominates and conforms Secretary of State?
3. What are the functions of the State Department?
4. Is the U.S. State Department a part of the executive or legislative branch?
5. Whose position is U.S. Secretary of State's position similar to?
6. What Institute does the U.S. State Department house?
7. What is the position of the Director of the U.S. Foreign Service Institute?
8. Who appoints the director of the division of the State Department?

EXERCISE 3.11

Complete the sentences with the suitable words and expressions:

1. The State Department carries out …….
2. The U.S. State Department has several divisions, including ……..
3. The head of the U.S. State Department is considered ……..

4. Each U.S. president has his own ……..
5. The candidate for the post of Secretary of State is nominated ……...
6. This institute is engaged in the preparation and teaching of foreign language courses for …….
7. The Director of the U.S. Foreign Service Institute is considered by his position to be ……

3.4. U.S. Judicial system (The Supreme Court)

At the very bottom of the federal system is the Supreme Court. It acts primarily as an appellate body, usually limiting itself to reviewing decisions on cases previously made by lower courts. As the 27th President of the United States and Chief Justice of the Court William Taft (1909-1913) said: "Presidents come and go, but the Supreme Court lasts forever." What makes the Supreme Court so influential? Perhaps it is the fact that judges are appointed for life, rather than elected? The concentration in the hands of just nine people of power sufficient to determine the fate of the entire country and its citizens? Or perhaps the high level of autonomy of judges in their decision-making and in choosing cases to hear?

As for the autonomy of case selection, out of approximately 100,000 annual appeals filed with the Supreme Court, no more than 1% are accepted for consideration. The criteria for choosing "worthy" cases by the judges remain unknown, but often the determining factors are the attention the case receives from the press, the publicity of the participants in the case, or connections.

After the first hearing of the case, the Supreme Court Justices retire to discuss it. Then they vote and instruct one of the justices to take the initiative in presenting what is called a majority opinion. This is a legal argument that is supported by all or an absolute majority – 5 justices. Based on the majority opinion, a precedent is created that determines further decisions by the justices when considering similar cases. However, it often happens that the majority, although agreeing with the decision on which side wins the case, cannot agree on the legal grounds for making the decision. In this case, the leading position is called a plurality opinion. This means that the decision that will be rendered is that which is supported by the majority of the justices on the winning side.

If the collective opinion of the justices is so important, then what factors influence the decision-making process of each chief justice? To answer this, we should turn to the consideration of the previously asked question about the lifetime appointment of judges.

The Supreme Court is inextricably linked with politics and partisanship, despite the fact that it represents a separate branch of government. After all, it is an integral part of a large system in which mutual influence and interpenetration are inevitable. The interrelationship between the legislative, executive and judicial branches of power is most clearly expressed in the constitutional authority of the president to nominate a candidate for the position of Chief Justice of the Supreme Court, who must be confirmed or rejected by a majority of senators. The opportunity to nominate one's candidate(s) is provided in the event of a vacancy (due to death or retirement). Each president takes the selection of nominees very seriously: after all, his task is to select a "convenient" person with whom his political views will coincide and who will not interfere with the implementation of the president's plans. Accordingly, preference is given to candidates from his own party.

The reason why the founding fathers chose to leave the position of Supreme Justices unelected and permanent is precisely in an attempt to remove this body from political pressure, but in reality today we see the exact opposite. In many countries, in order to avoid stagnation, supreme justices are appointed for a fixed term or are required to retire upon reaching a certain age, and in the United States, as Yale University professor B. Ackerman said, “senior members of the Supreme Court who have been sitting for several decades only contribute to the intensification of contradictions.”

The U.S. judicial system consists of the Supreme Court, 13 courts of appeals, 94 district courts, and two courts of special jurisdiction. Congress preserves the power to create or revoke federal courts and to determine the number of judges in the federal judiciary, but it cannot influence the Supreme Court.

The judicial force expands to:

- processes cases arising under the Constitution, acts of Congress, or treaties of the United States;
- matters related to ambassadors and consuls of foreign countries in the U.S.;
- disputes involving the U.S. government;
- polemics between the U.S. states and foreign countries;
- insolvency matters.

Considering the above, one might think that the U.S. Constitution adheres to a strict separation of powers, but this is not the case, and all branches of government overlap in their assigned functions.

Although Congress is responsible for passing legislation, no law will take effect until the president signs it, and the president can veto a bill, which can

only be overridden by a two-thirds vote of the House of Representatives and the Senate. The courts have the right of judicial consideration, under which they can declare laws or executive acts to exceed the powers of the Constitution and thus be null and void.

Congress has the power to try executive and judicial officers for misconduct and to remove them from office. These provisions and many others constitute the "checks and balances" within the Constitution.

EXERCISE 3.12

Try to define the following words and expressions:

1. Supreme Court …….
2. appellate body……
3. annual appeals……
4. plurality opinion…….
5. Chief Justice of the Supreme Court……
6. Senators …….
7. Ambassadors …….
8. consuls …….
9. ministers ……
10. veto a bill ……..

EXERCISE 3.13

Mark *true,* or *false*. Correct the *false* statements:

1. Federal system acts primarily as an appellate body, usually limiting itself to reviewing decisions on cases previously made by lower courts.
2. As for the autonomy of case selection, out of approximately 10,000 annual appeals filed with the Supreme Court, no more than 10% are accepted for consideration.
3. The plurality opinion means that the decision that will be rendered is that which is supported by the minority of the justices on the winning side.
4. The reason why the founding fathers chose to leave the position of Supreme Justices unelected and permanent is precisely in an attempt to remove this body from political pressure.
5. The interrelationship between the legislative, executive and judicial branches of power is most clearly expressed in the constitutional authority of the president to nominate a candidate for the position of Chief Justice of the Supreme Court, who must be confirmed or rejected by a majority of senators

6. Congress has the power to try legislative and judicial officers for misconduct and to remove them from office.
7. Although Congress is responsible for passing legislation, no law will take effect until the president signs it, and the president can veto a bill, which can only be overridden by a two-thirds vote of the House of Representatives and the Senate.
8. The courts have the power of judicial review, under which they can declare laws or executive acts to exceed the powers of the Senate.

(**For further information about the U.S. Democratic and Republican Party, and political system among minority groups see: the *Appendix 3.9,* the *Appendix 3.10,* the *Appendix 3.11***)

EXERCISE 3.14

Answer the following questions:

1. How many years a political struggle among the two parties continues?
2. Are the Democrats liberal or conservative?
3. When was the last time voters elected a third-party president?
4. What are the Political Action Committees interested in?
5. What does the Pluralist Model argue about?
6. What is the second name of the Republican Party?
7. When did the Republican Party take control of the House of Representatives?
8. Which party was created in 1854?
9. When did the Democratic Party emerge as a strong competitor to the Republicans?
10. When did the movement for the rights of the black population in the United States develop?

EXERCISE 3.15

Mark *true* or *false,* correct the *false* statements:

1. The U.S. Republican Party experienced a real defeat after Democrat Franklin Roosevelt, who led the country for 22 years, from 1923 to 1945, became president.
2. The long series of defeats was broken in 1953 by Republican Dwight Eisenhower, who won the presidential election and became one of the ideologists of the Cold War.
3. The Democratic Party really gained strength in the late 1970s, when former Hollywood actor Ronald Reagan became president.
4. According to statistics, Democrats are supported by 55% of the U.S. population.

5. Among the main positions of the Republican Party, it is necessary to highlight calls for lower taxes, the organization of free trade and the unimpeded carrying of firearms.
6. Members of the Democratic Party vote to strengthen the country's security and increase military spending; they reject pacifism and fight international terrorism.
7. Republicans support the theory of creationism, according to which everything living and nonliving on the planet is created by God, they fight the principle of separation of state and church.
8. Today, the main electorate of the U.S. Republican Party is people of retirement age, Negros, religious Americans and residents of urban areas.
9. The founders of the U.S. Democratic Party are several major politicians, including Thomas Jefferson (5th U.S. President), Andrew Jackson (8th U.S. President) and Martin Van Buren (8th U.S. President).
10. The founding date of U.S. Democratic Party is considered to be 1848.
11. In 1861-1865, the Civil War took place in the United States between the North and the South, that is, opponents of slavery and its supporters.
12. The North lost the war, slavery was abolished, and the U.S. Democratic Party was in decline for almost 40 years after the defeat.
13. Until 1972, the ruling party in the country was the Republican Party.
14. The founders of the U.S. Democratic Party are several major politicians, including Thomas Jefferson (3rd U.S. President), Andrew Jackson (7th U.S. President) and Martin Van Buren (8th U.S. President).
15. 65% of black Americans voted in the 2018 Presidential election, the highest figure ever.

EXERCISE 3.16
Match the words and their explanations:

1. federal government	A) a constitutional right to reject a decision or proposal made by a lawmaking body.
2. Tax	B) appropriate to a law court or judge; relating to the administration of justice.
3. state government	C) an arrangement to meet someone at a particular time and place.
4. punishment	D) the government that controls a subdivision of a country in a federal form of government, which shares political power with the federal or national government.

5. ambassador	E) government which is composed of three distinct branches: legislative, executive, and judicial.
6. judicial	F) choose (someone) to hold public office or some other position by voting.
7. Elect	G) a mandatory contribution levied on corporations or individuals to finance government activities and public services.
8. veto	H) supreme commander exercising supreme command and controlling a military branch.
9. majority	I) the infliction or imposition of a penalty as retribution for an offence.
10. appointment	J) a printed or written statement of the money owed for goods or services.
11. Bill	K) the greater number.
12. commander-in-chief	L) an accredited diplomat sent by a state as its permanent representative in a foreign country.

EXERCİSE 3.17

Answer the following questions about the three branches of government.

Questions	the Legislative	the Executive	the Judicial
1. What does it consist of?			
2. What are its responsibilities?			
3. How are they appointed?			
4. What are its functions?			

EXERCİSE 3.18

Compare the below given facts about the Senate and the House of Representatives

Facts	the Senate	the House of Representatives
Number of Members		
Number of Members Per State		
Length of Term		
Number of Terms		

Age Requirement		
Citizenship Requirement		
Leadership		
Function		
Fields of ratification		
Constituency		
Election		

EXERCISE 3.20

Make a survey among your group mates on the topic who is interested in the political system of USA. Rely on the facts about the USA political system.

Use the key words:

Government, executive, legislature, judiciary, judges, Supreme Court, armed, forces, Senate, the House of Representatives, taxation, Democratic, Republican, minority, the Vice President, etc.

EXERCISE 3.21

(self-research)

a) Make a self-research about the USA's success in gaining political independence.
b) Comment on the main reforms in the USA political system.
c) Make a short comparison on the political parties in the U.S. and the native country of your own.

MODULE 4

CULTURE

There is an opinion that the modern understanding of popular culture, as a modernized version of traditional culture, which was originated and developed in the United States, since it was here that cultural patterns were formed with the aim of uniting an ethnically polyphonic population into a single sociocultural space. The absence of their own traditional sources of culture pushed the American intellectual elite to create a "new" sociocultural unity, a "new" traditional society based on the foundations of American cultural values. However, as a result of the widespread dissemination of the philosophy of pragmatism, both at the everyday level and at the level of scientific thought, a special attitude towards culture, supported by the value systems of the American form of Protestantism, could not help but be formed in the American environment. Among the basic value characteristics that distinguish American culture, it is necessary to list the followings: − orientation towards the commercial (trade) type of relations in any branches of activity; − the need for a clear division of the working day into work and "legal" vacation; − priority of "print" culture over oral tradition; − lack of need for independent spiritual reflection and, as a consequence; − passion for instructive and explanatory literature.

As a result of such sociocultural exchange, a cultural space could not help but form, the functional purpose of which was to form a language of communication that was understandable and accessible to everyone. It is not difficult to assume that it was the non-elite social strata of the United States (farmers, laborers, ethnic minorities) who managed to preserve intact the traditions, attitudes and ways of self-expression of their native culture, which was defined in the philistine environment as popular culture.

Ordinary people sang and danced, read and had fun in their own way after a hard day of work. And the way they looked at life, what they sang or read, differed significantly from the views, music, literature, and art of the "mainstream" society, which claims certain elitism. It may seem that popular culture is superficial in its value structure, since it differs from mass culture in the absence of a generally accepted set of canons or normative techniques. However, this remark does not accurately convey the value essence of popular culture. The popular principle has retained the ability to very accurately and subtly respond to

the needs of the common man, reflect his ways of self-expression, and also sensitively respond to any changes in taste preferences. Most traditions are of "foreign" origin and have an ethnic connotation, so popular culture is distinguished by a variety of ethnic nuances. Popular culture has the ability to evoke in its audience feelings such as awe, wonder, and the ability to laugh at oneself. Mass culture is also capable of awakening "feelings" in its audience, but they contain much less spontaneous, sincere, creative principles. And finally, popular culture is an extremely mobile and flexible sociocultural phenomenon. If elitist culture is value-oriented towards the future, towards "eternity", traditional (folk) culture – towards the past, towards preserving cultural values and ideals, and mass culture – towards the present, towards mastering modern reality and adapting the population, then popular culture is not limited by time and value frameworks. It is simultaneously focused on the present, past and future sociocultural space. Gradually, following the values of conformity, the popular (traditional) cultures of the United States began to be viewed as a commodity, and with the development of the media they were transformed into a popular commercial culture, extremely close to mass culture.

4.1. National symbols of the United States of America

Perhaps there are not many countries in the world that would treat their national symbols with such reverence and attach such exceptional importance to them. You can talk about the symbols of the USA endlessly; each of them has its own heroic story and in its own way is able to characterize Americans as a nation. For example, the Stars and Stripes of the United States appeared back in 1777, and looked like alternating 13 stripes of white and red, as well as 13 white stars on a blue background. The stars symbolized divine purposes and indicated the number of states, the stripes – rays of light from the sun. The color symbols of the United States have a deep meaning: red stands for courage and valor, white stands for innocence and purity, and blue stands for justice, perseverance and vigilance. It first flew proudly over the Battle of Brandywine in Pennsylvania in the fall of 1777, and in 1818 Congress passed a law that finally approved the design and meaning of the U.S. national flag. The history of another symbol of the United States – its anthem – is closely connected with it.

Both the anthem and the flag have become symbols of freedom and democracy throughout the world; they are the first thing that people think of when they hear about America.

Another of the main symbols of the USA can be called the Great Seal, on which the bald eagle spreads its wings. The design of the seal was adopted in the

summer of 1782, and it symbolizes great aspirations, the independence of the nation and hopes for a better future. In the bird's beak is a scroll with the Latin saying "E Pluribus Unum", which means "Out of many, one", and speaks of the unity of the nation created from 13 colonies. In one paw of the eagle there is an olive branch, in the other there is a bunch of arrows, which symbolizes a power that is great both in war and in peace. On his chest he has a striped red and white shield, which he carries alone, and American citizens should also have only their own resources. Above the bird's head is a cloud that covers a blue field with 13 stars of the first states. The reverse side of the seal is also endowed with deep meaning; it is sometimes even called spiritual. There is a picture of a pyramid with 13 steps and the year 1776 at the bottom, written in Roman numerals. Above its top is the Eye of Providence and the motto “Annuit Coeptis” (“It favors our undertakings”). The scroll under the pyramid reads "A New Order of the Ages." The custodian of the Great Seal is the Secretary of State, and it can only be affixed to presidential addresses and international agreements.

Also, the state symbols of the U.S. are the Liberty Bell, which rang during the adoption of the Declaration of Independence, “Uncle Sam”, which is a gray-haired man with a top hat, dressed in national colors, and buildings of national significance: the White House, as the presidential residence, the Capitol, which represents parliamentary power and the Supreme Court building in Washington.

When talking about national American symbols, one cannot fail to mention the well-known Statue of Liberty, the George Washington, Lincoln and Thomas Jefferson Memorials, Arlington National Cemetery, Independence Hall and Mount Rushmore. Well, in a common sense, the American favorite sports games, baseball and American football, apple pie, hamburgers and hot dogs, bourbon whiskey, as well as Hollywood film studios, Disneyland, the lights of Las Vegas, and Niagara Falls, can be called peculiar symbols.

4.2. American culture of smiles

People in other countries often think that Americans seem insincere. We are smiling at complete strangers for no reason and ask everyone “how are you doing?”, but at the same time we don’t expect real answer. We do this everywhere: on the street, in shops and in every other case. This is especially unusual for others, who smile only at their acquaintances. Why do Americans do this? Let's talk about "American smile"

First, America is a country of immigrants. One hundred years ago they came to America – immigrants from many different countries. Most likely your neighbor initially spoke another language. If, for example, you came from Italy

and your neighbor came from Germany, how would you communicate with each other? People relied on nonverbal communication to communicate and build relationships with each other. Researches show that people in countries with many immigrants smile more. Even now, when we pass by a stranger (especially in small towns), it is considered common and polite to smile and greet each other. For Americans, a smile is a signal of good intentions and friendliness. The smile has become part our national character. Secondly, Americans especially value a positive, energetic person. A person who smiles seems happy and successful to everyone. We want to be close with such people. They make us feel good and comfortable in their surroundings. So, Americans smile in public much more often than in other countries where the population is more homogeneous. We never think about that our smiles seem strange and fake. We just try and want be welcoming and friendly. Along with the famous American smile, there is a mandatory greeting "how are you?" (how are you?). We absolutely must say this phrase so as not to seem indifferent. This moment is very important for Americans, that a person shows interest in another person. The answer we expect: "Okay, thank you. And you?" - "Fine. I'm fine" (Good. Thank you. And how are you? - Thank you. Fine). That's all. Americans don't want hear about your illnesses, problems with your family or your political views. It is considered inappropriate to talk about these things with people you don't know. So, if Americans smile and ask "how are you?" perfect strangers, it is possible that it seems insincere. But it's not intentional insincerity. This is our national, social habit associated with our attitude towards time as a special value and the importance of looking happy, energetic and successful. This doesn't mean that we want to be with you friends. This means we want to acknowledge your presence and let you know that our intentions are good and kind.

4.3. Traditions, customs and peculiarities of American lifestyle

Most of all Americans value freedom, they see their society as the most reliable and the best in the world. It is pleasant for them to think that America is a welcoming place for people who want freedom, opportunity, and democracy. And notwithstanding the fact that the Bill of Rights of the U.S. Constitution was adopted in 1791 and gives freedom of press, speech, and religion some groups of people lack being as free as others.

Americans believe in progress greatly. And they measure personal progress by how much a person has achieved. This is where it is preferable to speak about "American dream". "American dream" is a specific phenomenon. In this country every person's dream can come true. And it is really so. "Where

there is the will there is the way", they say. Nobody holds you back, if you do it.

But it is not important so much as far as money goes, it is more important for people to be happy. "Winning" is a very important word for Americans. Winning is an obsession. If you are the winner you are appreciated highly.

Another American tradition is a feeling of strong support for the military services. For Americans, soldiers are mostly people who fight for something just and fair whatever their task can be.

Voluntarism is also very popular. It means to be a member of a volunteer organization. Individualism is also very important for Americans. "Political correctness" is a very important case in the USA. It is so extreme that McDonald's restaurants do not sell "white coffee" or "black coffee". They sell "coffee with cream" and "coffee without cream".

Food is different in the USA, as it is brought it from all over the world. It is partly Italian, British, German, Mexican and Chinese. Many Americans like doughnuts. Doughnuts ("donuts" as Americans spell it) were originally from Holland. In 1847 a young American boy told his mother that her doughnuts were never cooked in the middle. He cut out the centres, his mother cooked them and they were very tasty. That is how the doughnuts got their holes.

Americans like different kinds of sports. The most famous of them are baseball, basketball, football and soccer. Baseball is considered to be the national sport. American football derived from the English game rugby.

And American mobility has always played a very important part in removing all the differences between them. Mobility means moving from one place to another, from region to region. For Americans it is easy to make a fresh start in a new place. This means that they are usually attached to a place very little.

(**For further information about the American dream and values see: the *Appendix 4.1,* the *Appendix 4.2***)

EXERCISE 4.1

Try to explain the following concepts:

1. American Dream is……
2. An axiological system is……...
3. Conglomerate of individual subcultures is…….
4. Directness is…….…….
5. Diversity is……....
6. Emigrants are ……
7. Equality is …….
8. Hedonistic attitudes are ……

9. Independence is ……
10. Individualism is ……
11. Informality is ……
12. Materialism is……
13. A “melting pot” is ……..……
14. A philistine environment is …….
15. Traditional music is ……..

EXERCISE 4.2

Answer the following questions:

1. Can you count the main symbols of U.S.?
2. When did the Stars and Stripes of the United States first appear?
3. What do the colors of the National Flag stand for?
4. When did the National Flag flow for the first time?
5. Why have the anthem and the flag become symbols of freedom of US?
6. When was the design of the Great Seal adopted?
7. What is the meaning of the Latin saying on the Great Seal?
8. What is the meaning of the motto “Annuit Coeptis”?
9. Who is the custodian of the Great Seal?
10. Where can the Great Seal be only affixed?
11. When did the Liberty Bell ring first?
12. How can you describe “Uncle Sam”?
13. What is the Capitol famous for?
14. What are the favorite sports games in U.S.?
15. What is the main sightseeing of U.S. related to the history?

EXERCISE 4.3

Complete the sentences with the suitable words and expressions:

1. The stars symbolized divine purposes and indicated ……..
2. Above pyramid’s top is the Eye of Providence and the motto “……..……..
3. …….. passed a law that finally approved the design and meaning of the U.S. national flag.
4. Another of the main symbols of the USA can be called ……..……..…….
5. In the bird's beak is a scroll with the Latin saying "E Pluribus Unum", which means…….…….
6. When talking about national American symbols, one cannot fail to mention the well-known Statue of Liberty, ……..

7. In one paw of the eagle there is an olive branch, in the other there is a bunch of arrows, which symbolizes …….
8. The scroll under the pyramid reads "……..….."
9. The White House, as the presidential residence, the Capitol, which represents ……..……...
10. The color symbols of the United States have a deep meaning: red stands for ……., white stands for ……., and blue stands for ……...

EXERCISE 4.4

Answer the following questions:

1. Can you describe the reason that pushed the Americans to create "a new" sociocultural unity?
2. What is the role of immigrants in developing culture of the US?
3. Are there any differences between mass culture and popular culture?
4. Why is it important for the Americans to smile?
5. What is the "American dream"?
6. Can you name the importance of "Declaration of Independence" to guarantee liberty?
7. How did American Revolution affect the model of "new Americans"?
8. When was "the Bill of Rights" adopted?
9. What are the most popular kinds of sports of the Americans?
10. How can you describe the "melting pot"?
11. How is independence observed in American society?
12. How is individuality valued in American culture?
13. What does individualism cover?
14. Is materialism affected by economic situation?
15. What are the main minorities covering diversity in the USA?
16. How is informality spread all over the USA?
17. What do the Americans consider when they try to be direct?

EXERCISE 4.5

Mark *true* or *false,* correct the *false* statements:

1. Americans consider that being direct is the best way to get higher in rank, and often, it is the main way to be "promoted".
2. Honesty and directness are estimated, and being open is often seen as a means of resolving problems and disbelieves.
3. After World War I, the meaning of the American dream changed. The goal reached some social standard.

4. Winning is not an obsession. If you are the winner you are underestimated.
5. Another American tradition is a feeling of strong support for the military services. For Americans, soldiers are mostly people who fight for something just and fair whatever their task can be.
6. During World War II period, the United States was prospering economically, money seemed to be everywhere.
7. It is significant to think that America is a welcoming place for people who need money and popularity.
8. American community is based on the idea that "all for one and one for all", while there are quite many differences like economic, social, and cultural variety throughout the U.S.
9. Americans are easy at saying hello to friends and casual acquaintances. Americans probably ask "How's it going?" as a way of greeting.
10. Diversity usually means being self-sufficient, with environment and assistance from government in different fields.

EXERCISE 4.6

Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. However, as a result of the widespread dissemination of the philosophy of individualism, both at the everyday level and at the level of scientific thought, a special attitude towards culture, supported by the value systems of the American form of Catholicism, could not help but be formed in the American environment.
2. Popular culture was initially a unity of individual subcultures, often linked into a different ethnic group.
3. At its core, popular culture implied a close connection with the history of the ethnic population, and with the values of folklore. America received a huge number of emigrants, people of various intellectual, cultural and modernized strata.
4. In this regard, the problem of communication and cultural coexistence of people has become more relevant than ever. In the process of developing cultural and geographical space, people exchanged attitudes, beliefs and values.
5. As a result of such sociocultural exchange, a cultural space could not help but form, the functional purpose of which was to form a language of controlling that was understandable and accessible to everyone.
6. It is not difficult to assume that it was the non-elite social strata of the United States (soldiers, teachers, ethnic minorities) who managed to preserve intact the traditions, attitudes and ways of self-expression of

their native culture, which was defined in the extraordinary environment as popular culture.

7. It may seem that popular culture is underestimated in its value structure, since it differs from mass culture in the absence of a generally accepted set of canons or normative techniques.
8. However, this remark does not accurately convey the value essence of popular culture. The popular principle has retained the ability to very accurately and subtly respond to the needs of the common man, reflect his ways of controlling, and also sensitively respond to any changes in taste preferences.
9. Mass culture is also capable of awakening "feelings" in its audience, but they contain much less lovely, friendly, creative principles.
10. From the original popular cultures inherent in ethnic communities, they were modernized into an integrative form of culture, which was distinguished by an orientation toward popularity, low adaptive capacity, and democratic principles.

EXERCISE 4.7
Fill in the chart.

National Symbol	Year of appearance	Description	Symbol
The Flag			
The Great Seal			
The Liberty Bell			
Uncle Sam			
the White House			
the Capitol			
Statue of Liberty			

(**For further information about the Federal Holidays, State Holidays, Ethnic And Religious Holidays see: the *Appendix 4.3,* the *Appendix 4.4,* the *Appendix 4.5***)

EXERCISE 4.8
When do the Americans celebrate the following holidays?

1. Birthday of Martin Luther King, Jr. ……
2. Christmas Day ……..
3. Columbus Day ……..
4. Day of Vesak…….

5. Easter Day…….
6. Emancipation Day…….
7. Flag Day ……...
8. Halloween Day……..
9. Inauguration Day ……..
10. Independence Day……
11. Indigenous Peoples' Day……
12. Memorial Day ……..
13. New Year's Day ……
14. Ramadan Holiday……..
15. Thanksgiving Day ……
16. Veterans Day ……
17. Washington's Birthday …….

EXERCISE 4.9

Fill in the gaps with suitable words and expressions.

1. At the beginning of the ……. George Washington's Birthday became a national holiday.
2. Currently, the American flag is a rectangular cloth with 13 …… and ……., stripes, which symbolize the original 13 …….. in 1776.
3. Every home has an obligatory attribute of the holiday – …….. …….. …….. that children hang by the fireplace on Christmas Eve.
4. In …….. the first U.S. President …….. …….. proposed to celebrate Thanksgiving Day on November 26 as a national holiday.
5. In …….. , the anniversary of the Flag Resolution of 1777 became a nationally accepted event by a proclamation by President …….. ……..
6. Inauguration Day is the day when the newly elected …….. and …….. ….. are sworn in and take office.
7. Martin Luther King is known for his "……..…." speech, which was heard by about 300 thousand Americans at the foot of the …….. …….. during the March on Washington in ……...
8. Memorial Day is celebrated every last …….. of May, and has been a federal holiday since …….. .
9. New Year's Day is considered to be a public holiday in all countries that maintain the …….. calendar.
10. On June 19 …….. , slavery was abolished in Texas City, nearly three years after President …….. issued the Emancipation Proclamation on September 22, …….. .

11. On October 12, …….. Christopher Columbus, leading an expedition of …….. people, arrived in the New World on the island of …….. (now San Salvador) in the Bahamas.
12. On this day, veterans' parades are traditionally held, and at …….. …….. …….. , the U.S. President solemnly lays wreaths at the Tomb of the …….. …….. .
13. One of the important attributes of the New Year is the …….. …….. (symbol of the past year) and the …….. (personification of the New Year).
14. Popular festivals the …….. …….. and the …….. of …….. are closely connected with the New Year holiday.
15. Posters and books with images of ……., …….. and their symbols are hung everywhere.

EXERCISE 4.10

Answer the following questions:

1. What are the popular festivals held in New Year holiday?
2. What are the attributes of the New Year?
3. When was the Birthday of Martin Luther King adopted as a federal holiday?
4. What is Martin Luther King's speech famous for?
5. When Martin Luther King was awarded the Noble Peace Prize?
6. When does Inauguration Day occur?
7. What is the history of Washington's Birthday?
8. Where do the President give a speech on Memorial Day?
9. When did the Americans begin to celebrate Flag Day?
10. Where is the original Declaration of Independence kept?
11. Who declared Columbus Day a federal holiday?
12. Whom do the Americans remember on Veteran's Day?
13. When did President George Washington propose to celebrate Thanksgiving Day?
14. What are the main attributes of Christmas Day?
15. When and where was slavery abolished?
16. Who issued the Emancipation Proclamation?
17. When Indigenous Peoples' Day was first celebrated?
18. How many states celebrate Indigenous Peoples' Day?
19. How can you describe Easter Day celebration?
20. What is the importance of celebrating Ramadan Day?

EXERCISE 4.11

Mark *true* or *false*, correct the *false* statements:

1. The Pantomime Parade is a 10-hour show that was organized by German immigrants in Philadelphia.
2. For Americans, the New Year is the beginning of a new life. Most Americans time various important changes in their lives to the holiday, for example, they promise themselves to start playing sports from January 1, go on a diet, give up smoking, etc.
3. Martin Luther King's Day is celebrated every third Monday of January, and has been a federal holiday since 1983.
4. For his important contribution to the democratization of American society, Martin Luther King was awarded the Nobel Peace Prize in 1954.
5. There are still disputes about the origin of the holiday, but Americans are inclined to believe that the first Thanksgiving Day was celebrated by English colonists on the Plymouth plantations in Illinois in the fall of 1612.
6. Christmas is a Christian holiday commemorating the Christ birth. It is celebrated every December 25th, and has been a federal holiday since 1885.
7. In a poll conducted by the Associated Press, 85% of African-American adults said that much more needs to be done to achieve equal treatment of whites and African-Americans by law enforcement agencies in the country.
8. Easter baskets are decorated with ribbons and live bows. It is customary to decorate your home with pots of lilies and bring them to church.
9. According to one version, in the 19th century, Irish immigrants brought the holiday to the United States, where it has been celebrated since 1862.
10. Ramadan displays this diversity in many ways, including the food prepared for early morning *iftar* and sunset *suhoor* meals.

EXERCISE 4.12

Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. Children in costumes and masks go begging for money from neighboring houses, saying the traditional phrase – "Trick or Treat!"
2. Abraham Lincoln was assassinated in Memphis, Tennessee, allegedly by James Earl Ray.
3. In 1947, on the initiative of U.S. President Franklin Roosevelt, Columbus Day was declared a national (federal) holiday.
4. In 1979, Congress passed a law according to which Memorial Day is now celebrated not on June 30, but on the last Monday in May.
5. In the state of Massachusetts, this tradition still exists – George Washington Birthday Parade.

6. Recalling that although slavery was abolished by President George Washington two years earlier, several southern states that had previously been part of the Confederacy (Texas was one of them) continued to resist fulfilling the requirements of the Emancipation Proclamation.
7. The signing ceremony of the Declaration, written on parchment, was held on August 2, 1886.
8. The Stars and Stripes originated as a result of a resolution adopted by the Marine Committee of the Second Continental Congress at Philadelphia on June 14, 1887.
9. This full moon marks the celebration of Vesak, commemorating the birth and passing of the Holy Monk.
10. Vesak is a Buddhist festival that celebrates four important events in the life of Siddhartha Gautama.
11. Veterans Day is a remembrance of all U.S. military veterans – past and present. It is celebrated every February 11th, and has been a federal holiday since 1943.
12. An integral symbol of Halloween is a backlit pumpkin head. The pumpkin symbolizes the end of the year, as well as the evil spirit and the fire that scares it away.
13. Traditionally, Halloween is celebrated on November 30 – the eve of All Saints' Day.

EXERCISE 4.13

Try to explain the following concepts:

1. Abolition ……...
2. attributes ……...
3. breaking the fast ……...
4. Buddhist communities…….
5. discrimination……
6. emancipation ……
7. enlightenment ……..
8. federal holiday …….
9. festivals ……....
10. gratitude ……...
11. iftar…….....
12. inauguration ……
13. indigenous ……
14. memorial ……...
15. parchment……..

16. poll …….....
17. racism ……...
18. rebellion ……...
19. resolution …….....
20. senators…….....
21. slavery …….....
22. suhoor…….....
23. tournament ……
24. vice-president…….....
25. wizards ……....

EXERCISE 4.14
Match the words and their explanations:

1. cultural value	A) It is based on running with the ball in hand. In its most common form, a game is played between two teams of 15 players each, using an oval-shaped ball
2. environment	B) he quality of saying what you think in a very honest way, without worrying about other people's opinions
3. conglomerate	C) thing consisting of a number of different and distinct parts or items that are grouped together
4. subcultures	D) he core principles or ideals that an entire community or society is based around
5. traditional	E) tendency to consider material possessions and physical comfort as more important than spiritual values
6. immigrant	F) the surroundings or conditions in which a person, animal, or plant lives or operates.
7. Rugby	G) happening or done in a natural, often sudden way, without any planning or without being forced
8. materialism	H) person who comes to live permanently in a foreign country.
9. diversity	I) cultural group within a larger culture, often having beliefs or interests at variance with those of the larger culture.
10. directness	J) the state of being various.
11. spontaneous	K) existing in or as part of a tradition; long-established.
12. parade	L) public procession, especially one celebrating a special day or event.

EXERCISE 4.15

Imagine one of your friends is planning to spend his/her summer holidays in the USA. Comment on some interesting facts about the U.S. cultural and social life. Use the key words:

Protestantism, sociocultural, American Dream, doughnuts, African Americans, Asian Americans, Indigenous Americans, and Latin Americans, equality, individualism, subcultures, Protestantism, superficial, federal holidays, Inauguration Day, Memorial Day, charities, racism, ceremonies, etc.

EXERCISE 4.16

(**self-research**)

a) Make a short comparison on the traditions and customs of your own county and the U.S.
b) Compare main values of Americans and Azerbaijanis.
c) Find out differences and similarities between your own holidays and holidays of Americans.

EXERCISE 4.17

Fill in the chart answering the questions about holidays:

Questions	**Thanksgiving Day**	**Ramadan Holiday**	**Christmas Day**	**Halloween Day**
When did the holiday begin?				
What group(s) of people celebrated this holiday first?				
What is the meaning of the holiday?				
When do Americans celebrate it nowadays?				
What do people do to celebrate this holiday?				
What is the symbol of this holiday?				

EXERCISE 4.18

Fill in the chart about holidays:

Holiday	Date of Celebration	Purpose
New Year's Day		
Martin Luther King, Jr. Day		
Inauguration Day		
Washington's Birthday		
Memorial Day		
Flag day		
Independence Day		
Columbus Day		
Veterans Day		
Thanksgiving Day		
Christmas Day		
Emancipation Day		
Easter Day		
Halloween		

EXERCISE 4.19

Make sentences about the information in the chart above. Use these sentence patterns.

The calendar date of _____(holiday) is _____(date). The main purpose of the holiday is _____

(**For further information about some U.S. prominent people see: the *Appendix 4.6)***

EXERCISE 4.20

Answer the following questions:

1. Why was Abraham regarded as "a national martyr"?
2. Where did Albert Einstein teach physics?
3. What were Clinton's crucial achievements during his term on duty?
4. How old was Bill Gates when he became a billionaire?
5. What was the main genre in which Elvis Presley recorded his songs?
6. What were Elvis Presley's records throughout his career?
7. Why was Washington regarded as a symbol of national unity and immunity?

8. When did Ford launch the Ford Motor Company?
9. When did the civil rights movement begin for Martin?
10. How did Martin L.King die?
11. Whom did Muhammad Ali defeat?
12. What were Armstrong's famous words when he first stepped onto the Moon?
13. What were main professions of Ronald Reagan?
14. What were basic inventions made by Thomas Edison?
15. How were "wrapped features" used?

EXERCISE 4.21

Find and correct the mistakes:

1. Lincoln’s governance style, marked by his responsibility to republican ideals, deserved him the title "Father of His Country."
2. Lincoln served as President from 1865 to 1870, during the American Civil War.
3. Bill Clinton was awarded the German media prize "Bambi" in the "Charity" category in Germany in June 2015.
4. E. Presley is the only singer to get awards into two separate music 'Halls of Fame'.
5. Roosevelt launched public works programs thus making the government abolish outlawing child labor, especially in markets, restaurants and textile factories.
6. The main political outcome of the March was the adoption of two key laws: the Voting Rights Act, which prohibited discrimination based on race, color, gender, or ethnicity, and the Civil Rights Act, which prohibits racial discrimination in voting.
7. Muhammad Ali was a well-known arm-wrestler of the history and a launcher of modern arm-wrestling as a type of sport.
8. Neil Armstrong made history on May 20, 1978, as the commander of Apollo 11.
9. Reagan was well known to the world for his citations, the most spread of them was what he said to Vladimir Putin in 1987.
10. Thomas A. Edison also shot the first American film version of Frankenstein in 1910. This made a road to modern day comics.

EXERCISE 4.22

Complete the sentences with the suitable words and expressions:

1. Lincoln issued the Emancipation Proclamation, ……..,.
2. Elvis made trips throughout the United States, appearing on-stage in over ……..,.

3. Washington was regarded as a symbol of national unity and immunity. His governance style deserved ……,."
4. Henry Ford revolutionized the automobile industry and modern manufacturing with the introduction ……,.
5. Martin Luther King's speech was recognized by the ……,.
6. Muhammad Ali was awarded “Sportsman of the Year”, ……
7. The principal author of the Declaration of Independence, Jefferson was motivating American colonists ……,.

EXERCISE 4.23

Mark *true* or *false* and correct the *false* statements.

1. In his political career in the 1830s, Lincoln defended the construction of the Illinois and Michigan Canal.
2. Lincoln has been characterized as "a classical liberal" of the 17th-century, and is well-regarded for his courses maintaining trade and business.
3. In July 1991 Clinton was appointed as the Republican presidential candidate.
4. When Franklin Roosevelt was elected President in 1933, more than 20 million Americans were unemployed.
5. Washington was appointed Commander-in-Chief of the Continental Army during the American Independence War.
6. After the Revolution, Washington played a crucial role in the formation of the U.S. Constitution.
7. Ford’s success influenced other manufacturers worldwide, both in the automobile industry and in the manufacturing sector as a whole.
8. Washington delivered a speech called "I have a dream", calling for equality in the rights of the black and white population of the United States.
9. Ali also beat undefeated fighters Sonny Banks, Rudi Lubbers, Billy Daniels, and George Foreman.
10. Elvis Presley was awarded various honors, including the Presidential Medal of Freedom, the Congressional Gold Medal.
11. In 1855 Disney opened a park in southern California called *Disneyland*.

EXERCISE 4.24

For self-research:

a) Work in groups of three or more. Find out more information about three or four prominent people mentioned above.
b) Find out about prominent boxers of your own country. Make a comparison with Muhammad Ali.
c) Find out more information about well-known singers of 50-70s of 20th century of your country. Compare their achievements with Elvis Presley.
d) Find out some interesting facts about the brave achievements of the Founding Fathers.

EXERCISE 4.25

1. Abraham Lincoln served as President from ……. during the ACW.

A) 1867 to 1871 B) 1877 to 1881 C)1861 to 1865 D) 1851 to 1855

2. During this time, Lincoln was the only Whig in the ……. deputation.
   A) Illinois B) New Jersey C)Texas D) Massachussets
3. At the June of ……. , Lincoln was one of the applicants for the party's nomination for Vice President of the U.S.
   A) 1867 B) 1856 C) 1851 D) 1855
4. ……. created the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC), which made not the banks but the federal government the guarantor of people's bank deposits.
   A) Bill Clinton B) George Washington
   C) Abraham Lincoln D) Franklin Roosevelt
5. ……. crucial achievements during his term on duty were the introduction of health insurance, fighting drug abuse, gun brutality, and poverty in the country and the world.
   A) Bill Clinton B) George Washington
   C) Abraham Lincoln D) Franklin Roosevelt
6. In September 1862, Lincoln issued the Emancipation Proclamation, which claimed the liberation of slaves in ……. states.
   A) 12 Republican B) 10 Confederate
   C) 14 Confederate D) 13 Republican
7. From ……., Clinton ministered as chairman of the National Governors Association.
   A) 1867 to 1871 B) 1986 to 1987 C)1951 to 1955 D) 1851 to 1855
8. Reagan was well known to the world for his citations, the most spread of them was what he said to ……. .
   A) Brejnyev B) Stalin C) Bill Clinton D) Mikhail Gorbachev

9. Washington was appointed Commander-in-Chief of the Continental Army during the ……. War.
   A) Independence B) American Revolutionary
   C) Liberal War D) Civil war
10. At the June of 1856, Lincoln was one of the applicants for the party's nomination for ……. of the U.S.
   A) President B) the Senate C) Vice President D) the Congressman
11. Lincoln assumed 110 votes, finishing ……. among the candidates.
   A) First B) fourth C) second D) third
12. He launched public works programs thus making the government abolish ……. especially in mines, factories and textile factories.
   A) Gender equality B) education problems
   C) living conditions D) outlawing child labor
13. One of Washington's main foreign policy achievements was his designation to keep the United States indifferent in the conflict between …….
   A) France and Britain B) Britain and Italy
   C) U.S. and France D) Italy and France

(*For further information about some prominent American writers see: the *Appendix 4.7)

EXERCISE 4.26

Answer the following questions:

1. How will you define the topics that Miller's works examine?
2. What fields did E. Poe's writings effect?
3. What various newspapers did Dreiser work for?
4. Which novel tells the story of the renter workers displaced by the Dust Bowl?
5. Can you describe the main plot of "Sister Carrie"?
6. What does *"For Whom the Bell Tolls"* stand for?
7. Why did not "*The Great Gatsby*" gain the deserved attention firstly?
8. Can you name the themes Steinbeck's writings cover?
9. What was the profession of Dreiser before becoming a writer?
10. What story does famous novel "*The Great Gatsby*" tell?

EXERCISE 4.27

Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. Dreiser's works have influenced generations of writers, including authors like Arthur Miller and Jack London.
2. In his prominent plays Poe tried to enlighten the disappointment with the American Dream, the pressures of capitalism, the dangers of extremism, the collision between personal privilege and social laws.
3. Some of Miller's famous short stories comprise: "The Black Cat", "The Tell-Tale Heart", "The Fall of the House of Usher", etc.
4. "Of Mice and Men" shows the longing and endless battle between nature and man, human persistence, loneliness, and the importance of the human spirit.
5. "The Great Gatsby" points out the tragic story of Clyde Griffith's, a young man who tries to climb the social ladder through manipulation and crimes
6. "The Old Man and the Sea" tells the story of two migrant workers, George and Lennie, who fight for earning a living.
7. "An American Tragedy" was considered to symbolize the moral decomposition of the American Dream, and its investigation of love and ambition influenced highly its readers from various generations.
8. "An American Tragedy" explores the complication of good and evil through two generations of families.
9. Jack London helped to redefine the novel in America, accentuating social realism and naturalistic manners.
10. "East of Eden" investigates themes of ambition, class struggle, illustrating the destroying consequences of a system that estimates success more than morality.

EXERCISE 4.28

Fill in the gaps with suitable words and expressions:

1. Together with the Pulitzer Prize, Miller obtained various other awards, including the …….....…….
2. Dupin is often respected as a predecessor to subsequent fictional detectives such as …….....……...
3. Hemingway's emphasis on clarity and the power of subtext influenced a great number of writers, including ……. ...
4. London is the author of more than 50 books, various short stories, and articles, written in …….....…….
5. Steinbeck was awarded the Nobel Prize in Literature in …….

6. Steinbeck was awarded the Nobel Prize for his "realistic and imaginative works, ……...……"
7. "……...……. " describes themes of racism, freedom, and morality through the adventures of Huck Finn and Jim.
8. "Adventures of Huckleberry Finn" is considered as one of the greatest novels, particularly for its use of native and folk language and its critical view of ……....……
9. "…… " explores the complication of good and evil through two generations of families.
10. "……..……." and "……...……." focus on the expansion of self-made men in the business world, examining the moral compromises they make.

EXERCISE 4.29

Mark *true* or *false*, correct the *false* statements:

1. Dreiser's poetry has affected many poets, particularly in terms of structure, promoting the development of American Romantic poetry.
2. Poe worked as an editor for several literary journals, most notably Graham's Magazine,
3. *Martin Eden* describes the cruelty of war, the passing character of love and courage. The novel points to the way how war demolishes one's personal life emotionally.
4. His writings were successfully translated into more than 60 languages, making him prominent in the international sphere during his lifetime. His famous works are "White Fang", "Martin Eden", 'The Call of the Wild", "The Sea-Wolf", etc.
5. London's writing contributed to the development of adventure fiction and influenced later authors such as Ernest Hemingway and Robert Service.
6. Together with his writing, Twain was an influential public speaker. He gave lectures throughout the United States and Asia, amusing audiences with his humorous anecdotes, deep observations, and social commentary.
7. Miller's personal experiences, including his relations with African Americans in the South, deeply influenced his views.
8. London's works are defined with launching the detective genre, especially through his character C. Auguste Dupin in stories like "The Murders in the Rue Morgue".
9. "An American Tragedy", perhaps Dreiser's most famous work, points out the tragic story of Clyde Griffith's, a young man who tries to climb the social ladder through manipulation and crimes.

10. "The Murders in the Rue Morgue" investigates themes of ambition, class struggle, and the American Dream, illustrating the destroying consequences of a system that estimates success more than morality.

EXERCISE 4.30
For self-research:

a) Find out more information about prominent writers mentioned above.
b) Compare writings of one of the writers of your own country with that of U.S. Pay attention to the fact of choosing them from the same period.
c) Describe consequences and influences of writings of different authors related to American Dream.
d) Make a list of novels written by American writers you have read. Give a short content to your groupmates.

EXERCISE 4.31
Fill in the chart

Name	**Century he lived**	**Topics he mentioned**	**Genre**	**Directions**
Arthur Miller	XX	Individuals, society, guilt, obligation,	Play, screenplay, drama	playwright, critic, essayist
Edgar Allan Poe				
Ernest Hemingway				
F. Scott Fitzgerald				
Jack London				
John Steinbeck				
Mark Twain				
Theodore Dreiser				

CORRECTIONS AND ANSWERS

MODULE 1

EXERCISE 1.1

Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. The country occupies the fourth place in the list of the largest countries in the world (after Russia, Canada and China).
2. From the northern borders, the state is adjacent to Canada.
3. The southern side has a border with Mexico.
4. Alaska is situated in the northwest of North America and Hawaii is an archipelago in the Pacific Ocean.
5. The continental part of the USA is washed by the waters of the Atlantic Ocean in the east, the Pacific Ocean in the west.
6. The Gulf of Mexico flows in the south; Alaska is washed by the Arctic Ocean from the north.
7. The United States owns a number of territories in the Caribbean Sea.

EXERCISE 1.2

Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. The *western* part of the country is mainly mountainous, formed by Cordillera.
2. Further to the *east*, the Rocky Mountains stretched parallel to the Cordillera.
3. The relief of the USA mainly consists of mountain systems, hills, plateaus and plains. This applies not only to *central* areas, but also to remote territories.
4. In the United States, there are the most popular, largest and oldest canyons dating back several *million* years.
5. There are two categories of canyons, divided by the method of formation.
6. Such impressive parameters are due to the fact that the Grand Canyon began to form *17* million years ago, but the erosion process does not stop, as the rapid flows of the Colorado River carry a million tons of rock into the ocean.
7. First limestone began to collapse, then shales and sand stones, and now *basalt and granite.*
8. This object was formed around the channel of the Zelenaya River. Its length is *20* km, its maximum width is *4* km, and its depth is *600* m. The canyon was formed 10 million years ago.

9. The appearance of canyons in this part of the USA is associated with the junction of the *Rocky* Mountains and *two* plateaus.
10. The rocks have scarlet and golden-chocolate shades and are the birthplace of the *Anasazi* tribe.
11. Due to strong winds and frosts, there are unusual geological formations here, which is called *hoodoo*.
12. The rocks have white, red and orange shades. The *Paiute* Indians live in this region.
13. The length of the latter is *75* km.
14. The *Yute* tribes have long lived here.

EXERCISE 1.3

Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. The Cordillera system includes a huge plateau that occupies the entire western territory from Alaska to California and New Mexico.
2. The length of the Cordillera system range is more than 1.5 thousand km.
3. The Appalachians stretch from northeast to southwest and consist of two large plateaus: Cumberland in the south and Allegheny in the north.
4. The length of the Appalachians system is 2600 km.
5. Mountains occupy the space from Alaska to California.
6. In the northern and eastern part of America, the mountain peaks are covered with forests.
7. The average height of the Appalachian Mountains in the system is no more than a kilometer above sea level.
8. In Adirondack Mountain the highest are the White and Green Mountains, as well as Longfellow and Adirondack.
9. In the south, the mountains begin in New Mexico, gradually rising and expanding to Utah.
10. The main part of the large Rocky Mountains is located in Colorado.
11. The highest point of the region is Mount Albert with a height of 4.5 thousand meters above the sea.
12. The Rocky Mountains are rich in minerals, so gold, silver, copper, and lead are mined there.
13. The Rocky Mountains divide the Pacific and Atlantic Oceans.
14. Pacific Mountains begin in the north, where Mount Olympus rises 2.4 thousand meters in Washington.
15. The western slopes of Appalachians Mountains descend into the ocean.

EXERCISE 1.5

Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. 3 million miles.
2. second-longest
3. western Montana.
4. 336,000.
5. southward, Gulf of Mexico.
6. Bering Sea.
7. plains of Texas.
8. Pacific Northwest.
9. Canadian Rockies.
10. agricultural communities, and fur trading centers.
11. enormous Grand Coulee Dam

EXERCISE 1.6

Fill in the gaps with suitable words and expressions:

1. trade routes, borders, and passageways.
2. transportation, development of towns and businesses
3. seven states, Great Plains, St. Louis, Missouri.
4. Rio Grande River's,
5. The Yukon River, 19th century.
6. 287,500 square miles.
7. the Atchafalaya River in Louisiana.
8. such as erosion, deluge, and poor water quality,
9. of tall mountains, lush woods, and narrows
10. Pacific Northwest.

EXERCISE 1.8

Mark *true* or *false,* correct the *false* statements:

1. True.
2. False. The Missouri River rises in the beautiful Rocky Mountains of western Montana and excises its way through the heartland of the United States.
3. False. The Rio Grande River covers about 336,000 square miles and is a river of great natural beauty and cultural importance that serves as a border between countries.
4. True.
5. True.

6. False. Stakeholders are collaborating and coming up with creative ways to ensure the Red River is managed encouragingly, defending its ecological integrality and cultural heritage for next generations.
7. False. The Red River is a significant river that runs through the center of the southern United States.
8. True.
9. False. The Columbia River maintains a wide range of fields in the Pacific Northwest, including transportation, hydroelectric power forming, agriculture, and recreation.
10. False. The Columbia River's vessels, which include the well-known Bonneville Dam and the enormous Grand Coulee Dam, propose chances for boating, fishing, and wildlife viewing while also giving chance pure electricity and managing flooding.

EXERCISE 1.9

Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. Pennsylvania, Indiana.
2. 1,335 feet and an average depth - 483 feet.
3. at the center of a volcano.
4. Lake Superior, which lies in Michigan, Minnesota….
5. 195 feet.
6. Ontario.
7. between California and Nevada.
8. Lake Michigan.
9. differences of fish species.
10. states of New York and Ontario, Canada.

EXERCISE 1.10

Fill in the gaps with suitable words and expressions.

1. the Great Salt Lake in Utah.
2. saltwater environment.
3. mid-continent, one million.
4. Atlantic Ocean.
5. 280 feet.
6. two inches.
7. Nevada.
8. Californian.
9. Michigan, and Wisconsin.
10. Chicago.

11. nearly 25 feet and 210 feet.
12. Lake Ontario's.
13. attracting hunters.
14. an area of 1,700 square kilometers

EXERCISE 1.12

Mark *true* or *false,* correct the *false* statements:

1. False. Utah's Great Salt Lake is a magnificent natural phenomenon that comprises 2,460 square kilometers.
2. False. Lake Michigan lies south of Lake Superior and is bordered by the Upper and Lower peninsulas of Michigan, Indiana, Illinois, and Wisconsin
3. False. Many miles of high-quality, sandy beaches expand along the lake coasts. Provincial and county lands propose a great number of camping,
4. True.
5. False. It is the only Great Lake wholly located in the United States, covering 22,300 square miles.
6. True.
7. False. With an area of nearly 10.000 square miles Lake Erie is the fourth-largest Great Lake. Its waters are vital resources for drinking, industry, and entertainment.

EXERCISE 1.13

Match the words and their explanations:

1. C
2. D
3. F
4. I
5. J
6. A
7. K
8. B
9. E
10. G
11. H

EXERCISE 1.14

1. e
2. i
3. b

4. l
5. m
6. h
7. j
8. c
9. k
10. a
11. g
12. p
13. o
14. n
15. d
16. f

EXERCISE 1.15

1. e
2. g
3. l
4. a
5. k
6. i
7. d
8. j
9. o
10. m
11. c
12. n
13. h
14. f
15. b

EXERCISE 1.16

Choose the right variant.

1. C) Mexico
2. D) Pacific Ocean
3. A) Atlantic Ocean
4. B) South
5. A) Caribbean Sea
6. d) Cordillera Mountains

7. B) Rocky Mountains
8. C) 17 million years
9. B) Rocky Mountains
10. A) Hoodoo
11. C) The Paiute Indians
12. A) Alaska
13. D) 1.5 thousand km.
14. B) Cumberland
15. C) 2600 km
16. D) Appalachian Mountains
17. A) Adirondack Mountain
18. B) Utah
19. D) Colorado
20. C) Rocky Mountains
21. D) Pacific and Atlantic
22. A)Washington
23. B) western
24. C) 2,460
25. B) Lake Erie

MODULE 2

EXERCISE 2.3

Mark *true* or *false* and correct the *false* statements:

1. True.
2. False. Vespucci reportedly joined the Spanish navy in 1497 for his first expedition.
3. False. In 1499-1500, Vespucci sailed with the expedition of Alonso Ojeda as navigator, under his command were two ships equipped at his own expense.
4. True.
5. False. Nowadays, the transfer of flora and fauna from mainland to mainland is called Columbian *exchange.*
6. False. The colonists also brought diseases to America to which the Indians had no immunity.
7. True.
8. True.
9. False. In May 1502, Columbus organized the fourth voyage on four sailboats.
10. False. Columbus brought tobacco, corn, potatoes, a small amount of gold and several aborigines from the first voyage.

EXERCISE 2.4

Fill in the gaps with suitable words and expressions:

1. Virginians of Cape Cod, 1620.
2. Mayflower's to Holland.
3. 1630, to Boston, Winthrop.
4. Massachusetts Colony.
5. 18th century.
6. coal trade, New England.
7. "Mayflower".
8. Indians.
9. 1621, Plymouth, Thanksgiving.
10. Atlantic, three groups.
11. Dutch, Africa.
12. in 1712 and in 1741.
13. agriculture.
14. Small farming and home industries.
15. timber, iron.

EXERCISE 2.5

Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. The Pilgrims founded the colony of *New Plymouth*, marking the beginning of New England.
2. The dominance of the theocracy of the upper clergy was established in the colony, punishing in the strictest manner everyone for the slightest deviation from the *faith and instructions* of their elders.
3. Another persecuted man, *Pastor T. Hooker*, led his regents with their families, cattle and all property into the wild forests and stood on the banks of the river *Connecticut*. To keep the population, the theocratic elite, with the consent of Governor Winthrop, began to persecute those of other faiths.
4. Plantation farming and slave labor predominated in *Georgia*, Virginia, *Maryland*, North and South *Carolina*.
5. The dinner hold in *Plymouth* marked the beginning of the national holiday – *Thanksgiving*, which is now celebrated annually in the United States at the end of November.
6. Over time, the Puritans, overcoming harsh natural conditions and pushing out the *Algonquian* and *Iroquois* Indians, expanded their territory and took up farming, crafts, and maritime industries.

7. The northern group included the colonies of New Hampshire, *Massachusetts*, Connecticut, Vermont and *Rhode Island*.
8. Along the colonies of the *Atlantic* coast, a relatively narrow strip stretched 13 colonies, divided into *three groups* according to geographical and socioeconomic characteristics.
9. Taking advantage of the friendship with the Indians, a group of supporters founded a new colony in *1636* with the most democratic order and separation of church and state.
10. The new settlers cultivated tobacco, *cotton*, rice, and *indigo* - a plant that produced a persistent color of beautiful blue.

EXERCISE 2.7

Complete the sentences using appropriate words and expressions:

1. ……., and the others due to the diseases that the Europeans brought with them.
2. ……..., religious ceremonies and views of the Indians tribes, their own unique tools, weapons and other items used by them was quite large
3. …… hoping to abolish expansionism.
4. ……, like measles, influenza, and smallpox affected greatly the Native Americans.
5. ……, religious freedoms, and the traditions.
6. …… on the composition of the word stock.
7. …… 5 different groups.
8. …… to American Indians and Native students for the best educational environment.
9. …… for Native American students from tribes inhabiting within the state.
10. …… the new conditions encountered here by the arrivals.

EXERCISE 2.12

Complete the sentences with suitable words and expressions:

1. The colonies helped England in its endless wars with France, …...
2. ……., ship building, textiles and woolen products exporting.
3. …….. King George III of the necessity and possibility of placing additional burdens on the colonists.
4. ……., another 10 thousand soldiers were stationed, whom the colonists were supposed to provide with everything necessary.

5. ……., painted their faces and adorned their hair, snuck onto the ships bringing tea to the East India Company, and threw the cargo into the sea.
6. ……., poorly armed colonists in a battle called the "Battle of Bunker Hill".
7. …….. with the British troops or engaged in sabotage behind the lines of the patriots.
8. …….. Egrians also supported the British, who promised liberation.
9. …….. the ruler of his loyalty, although he judged "bad laws".
10. The position of the Congress was noticeably weakened ……...
11. July 4, 1776 Congress adopted the Declaration of Independence. ……..
12. …….. while hating the British, looked favorably on the American Republicans and could help them.
13. ……., conducted separate negotiations with England, which sharply worsened the position of the United States.
14. …….. 1775-1783 brought victory to the United States.
15. …….. Fort West Point to them, and then fled and fought against the Americans.

EXERCISE 2.13

Mark *true* or *false* and correct the *false* statements.

1. **True**.
2. **False**. The severity increased after the victorious Seven Years' War. During military operations, the British took away from France part of Canada (Quebec) and part of the possessions in the American Midwest.
3. **False**. A special decree of the king prohibited Americans from settling beyond the Allegheny Mountains.
4. **True**.
5. **False**. The port of Auston was closed and blockaded, Massachusetts was deprived of the right of self-government, and citizens were deprived of freedom of assembly.
6. **False**. The British destroyed the warehouse, repelling the attacks of the Minutemen, but on the way back on April 9, 1775, they were subjected to massive shelling near Lexington and, having lost 273 people killed and wounded,
7. **True**.
8. **True**.
9. **False**. In 1777, these relations were enshrined in the "Articles of Confederation" adopted by Congress, which gave the states greater rights, even to the point of declaring war.

10. **False**. At a meeting in June 1776, Virginia delegate Richard Lee stood and read the historic decision: "Resolved that these united colonies are and of right ought to be free and independent states".
11. **False**. The Declaration proclaimed the equality of all people and such inalienable human rights as "life, liberty and the pursuit of happiness."
12. **True**.
13. **True**.
14. **False**. They launched military operations at sea such as Gibraltar, so that the British were even afraid of an invasion of their islands.
15. **False**. The English government tried to drag Russia into the war on its side, but Empress Catherine II, responding very kindly to George II and sincerely indignant at the republican rebels in her heart, refused to let Russian soldiers go.
16. **True**.
17. **True**.
18. **False**. July 4, 1776 Congress adopted the Declaration of Independence. Since then, this day has been celebrated annually in the United States as the main national holiday - Independence Day.
19. **False**. Most of the Indians helped England, which promised to preserve their lands. Some of the Egrians also supported the British, who promised liberation.
20. **False**. Only on the third attempt, having lost up to a thousand people, the British defeated the untrained, poorly armed colonists in a battle called the "Battle of Bunker Hill".

EXERCISE 2.16

Fill in the gaps with suitable words and expressions:

1. South.
2. 1786-178, Daniel Shays.
3. of trade, fishing.
4. 1791.
5. President, four, Commander-in-Chief.
6. Legislative, two, Upper Senate, two.
7. Representatives, two
8. Supreme, 6, 18th.
9. On June 14, 1777, 13 stripes (seven red, alternating with six white), 13 stars.
10. 1782. 13 crossed arrows, olive.
11. "The Star-Spangled Name".
12. Over 200 years, only 26.

13. Enlightenment, Jefferson.
14. The National Bank.
15. 1819-1820.
16. "Missouri Compromise,"
17. British, France.
18. New York and Baltimore, 1814.
19. 1778, American.
20. 1814.

EXERCISE 2.17

Find the mistakes and correct them:

1. The Congressional treasury was *empty*; a group of officers developed a plan to establish a monarchy.
2. He confiscated and sold off the lands of the crown, large landowners - the British and the *Oyalists*.
3. The Articles of Confederation of *1777* were in no way consistent with these objectives. A detailed Constitution that served the interests of *1787* was needed. There were *55* delegates from all states.
4. Finally, on September 17, *1787*, the majority of delegates - the so-called "Founding Fathers" – accepted a compromise project and signed the text of the first U.S. Constitution that still exists today.
5. The President had great powers – he appointed the government, ambassadors, and members of the Supreme Court. He governed with the help of secretaries (ministers) of the relevant departments accountable only to him, but subject to approval by *Congress*.
6. Each state, regardless of size or population, sent *two* people to the Senate. The Senate confirmed appointments to various posts in the state, decided on foreign policy issues.
7. Only white men, starting from the age of *21*, with a certain property status enjoyed the right to vote in the country.
8. *Women*, black slaves and free poor people sought voting rights. There were also restrictions for resident candidates.
9. But in *1789*, at the request of the majority of the population of almost all states, J. Madison formulated the first amendments to the Constitution – the famous Bill of Rights.
10. The bill was approved by the states in *1791*.
11. The beauty and intent of the flag was lost, and in *1818* it was decided that there would always be 13 stripes on the white flag, and the states joining the Union would be designated only by a new star.

12. On the eagle's chest is a shield with the colors of the national flag. In the bird's beak there is a ribbon with the inscription in Latin: E pluribus unum – "Out of many, one"; above the head there is a rosette with *13* stars.
13. The text was written by Francis S. Key in *1814* during the second war with England. The melody was the religious psalm "Anacreon in Paradise."
14. "Jeffersonian democracy" and after 1800, Americans rejected this policy, electing "president of the leader of the Republicans, *57*-year-old Thomas Jefferson.
15. Jefferson's name was associated with the *American Dream*, a social ideal in which the equality of all people was combined with universal material prosperity.
16. The chief justice of the *Supreme Court*, the largest judge in America at that time, J. Marshall, held a court decision in *1803*, which turned into a principle of the American political and legal system.
17. Historians had every reason to call the *8* years of his reign "*Jeffersonian* democracy." The "era of good agreement" has arrived. The authority of the Republicans was high; their candidates occupied the White House almost without a fight.
18. At the center of the struggle was the issue of admitting the new Tata of Missouri into the Union and the fate of slavery in *Louisiana*.
19. Slave ownership was established in Louisiana, *Missouri* entered the Union as a slave state, and tiny England as a free state.
20. On July 14, *1789*, the bourgeois Revolution was victorious in France.

EXERCISE 2.20

Find and correct the mistakes:

1. The First American Revolution, while freeing the country from the yoke of England, did not free the *Negro* slaves from the yoke of slave owners.
2. This fundamental confrontation between the two labor systems was complemented by a moral and political question: about *the freedom of blacks, about the inadmissibility of the institution of slavery in a civilized society.*
3. Southern planters who exported *cotton* to England and other countries received high-quality industrial products in return and, naturally, sought to maintain *low* duties.
4. Anti-slavery articles and pamphlets by famous writers G. Thoreau, R. Hildreth, *H. Helper* and others were distributed in the country.
5. An unknown *38-year-old woman*, who lived for a long time on the border with slave-holding states wrote a book that shocked literally all of America and the rest of the world.

6. *Abolitionists* organized an "underground railroad," risking their freedom and even their lives, transported them to the North or Canada runaway slaves from the South.
7. With a detachment of 22 people (including 5 blacks), on October 16, *1859*, he captured the arsenal in the town of Harpers Ferry.
8. Lincoln was involved in the political life of *Illinois*, where he lived and became congressman.
9. McClellan's army moved to the capital of the Confederacy, Richmond, located just *100* km from the U.S. capital.
10. In July *1861*, the northerners set out on a campaign, hoping that Richmond would become an easy target.

EXERCISE 2.21

Fill in the gaps with the suitable words and expressions:

1. 1862, 10 dollars, 160 acres
2. 1862.
3. Lincoln.
4. 1865.
5. 750.
6. 180.
7. San Francisco.
8. Confederacy, Maryland.
9. 1863.
10. 1865.
11. Lee.
12. St. Douglas.
13. Maryland.
14. free labor.
15. "King Cotton" and tobacco.

EXERCISE 2.22

Mark *true* or *false* and correct the *false* statements.

1. False. At the end of the 50s, there were about 2 thousand abolitionist societies, uniting more than 250 thousand people.
2. False. He was the sixteenth President.
3. True.
4. True.
5. True.

6. False. Lincoln published a preliminary Proclamation abolishing slavery in the rebel states effective January 1, 1863. On January 1, 1863, Lincoln signed final Proclamation. The blacks were freed without any ransom, but also without land.
7. False. Soon, the army of General W. Sherman moved from Mississippi to the shores of the Atlantic Ocean. In December 1864, Sherman's troops, which included many blacks, captured the oceanfront city of Savannah.
8. False. The sale agreement was signed on March 30, 1867 on very favorable terms for the Americans: they received a huge territory of 577 thousand square meters. Miles of this for 7.2 million dollars in gold.
9. True.
10. False. A month earlier, on March 4, Lincoln assumed the presidency for the second time. He prevailed in the elections of 1864 over the Democratic candidate, his former commander in chief, J. McClellan.
11. True.
12. False. This long and complex process was called Reconstruction and lasted from 1865 to 1877. It became an inevitable stage of the Second American Revolution.

EXERCISE 2.23
Match the words and their explanations:

1. E
2. C
3. F
4. A
5. H
6. D
7. J
8. B
9. K
10. G
11. N
12. I
13. M
14. P
15. L
16. O

EXERCISE 2.24

Choose the right variant.

1. B) the Congress
2. A) 1776
3. D) the Constitution
4. C) 1791
5. A)1814
6. C) the Allegheny Mountains
7. A) Massachusetts
8. B) 273
9. A) Gibraltar
10. C) 1776
11. D) the Supreme Court
12. B) two
13. D) American Dream
14. A) 1803
15. A) Indians
16. D) Battle of Bunker Hill.
17. A) On September 17, 1787
18. B) 8 years

EXERCISE 2.26 (For self-research)

Find out who is on the picture and answer the following questions:

(Alexsander Hamilton)

1. He participated in establishing New Constitution.
2. He wrote a great number of essays and poems.
3. He tried to pass many laws against it.
4. $10 bill.
5. In 1775
6. The Revolutionary War began.
7. George Washington.
8. For four years.
9. He managed the staff, planned the battles, and carried out documentation.
10. In 1782.
11. The First Bank of the United States.
12. It held the government's money and printed paper money.
13. He was against slavery
14. In the sugar plantations where he grew up
15. This house was named after his father's ancestral home in Scotland.

16. In 1789 he was appointed the first secretary of the treasury.
17. He publicly defended Boston colonists.
18. On July 11, 1804.
19. He was killed in a duel with his rival Vice President A.Burr.
20. With the great popularity of the musical named after him winning Tony Award.

EXERCISE 2.27 (For self-research)
Find out who is on the picture and answer the following questions:
(George Washington)

1. Answers may vary.
2. He served as the first president, commanded he Continental Army during the American Revolution, and established the U.S. Constitution.
3. The U.S. capital, many schools, parks, and cities are named after him.
4. Thomas Johnson of Maryland.
5. Since he was one of the most experienced military commanders.
6. Boston, Trenton, Princeton, etc.
7. Victory at Yorktown.
8. He was a slave owner for 56 years, and the only Founding Father president to free all of the enslaved people he held.
9. His presence lent probability to the proceedings, and to the document's approval.
10. Keeping the U.S. indifferent in the conflict between France and Britain.

EXERCISE 2.28 (For self-research)
Find out who is on the picture and answer the following questions:
(John Adams)

1. Answers may vary.
2. In 1774.
3. In 1775, during the Second Continental Congress.
4. He nominated George Washington to serve as commander of the Continental Army; he selected Jefferson to draft the Declaration of Independence; he wrote Thoughts on Government.
5. America's first Vice president.
6. "You and I ought not to die, before We have explained ourselves to each other."

EXERCISE 2.29 (For self-research)

Find out who is on the picture and answer the following questions:

(Christopher Columbus)

1. He was a navigator of four major voyages opening the way for Europeans to the Americas.
2. It led to exploitation, colonization, and exploration of the New Continent.
3. Vikings had visited North America five centuries earlier.
4. The Niña, Pinta, and Santa María.
5. He intended to conquer the native populations and establish new colonies.
6. On his third voyage.
7. His goal was to find the "Strait of Malacca," to try to find India.
8. On the second Monday of October.
9. In 1971.
10. Answers may vary.

EXERCISE 2.30 (For self-research)

Find out who is on the picture and answer the following questions:

(Amerigo Vespucci)

1. He made a discovery of a New Continent.
2. He received an excellent education, spoke fluently several languages, and was interested in cartography, astronomy, and navigation.
3. He was introduced to Columbus before his first voyage in 1492.
4. To help with cartography and navigation.
5. Based on his knowledge of maps.
6. To Lorenzo Medici.
7. Mundus Novus (New World).
8. 1503-1504.
9. In his published a book on geography.
10. Realization of the discovery of a new continent, exploration of the mouth of the Amazon River, new methods for determining longitude, etc.

EXERCISE 2.31 (For self-research)

Find out who is on the picture and answer the following questions:

(Thomas Jefferson)

1. Answers may vary.
2. From 1779 to 1781.
3. As a member of the second Continental Congress, he was its major author.
4. In France.
5. From 1790 to 1793.

6. In 1796.
7. He lost to Federalist John Adams and later served as his vice president between 1797 and 1801.
8. In 1801.
9. For two terms.
10. In 1803, from Napoleon for $15 million.

EXERCISE 2.32 (For self-research)
Find out who is on the picture and answer the following questions:
(James Madison)

1. Answers may vary.
2. He spent months drafting it.
3. It laid the foundation for the United States Constitution.
4. In 1789.
5. He served four terms and fought to secure the passage of the Bill of Rights.
6. In 1808.
7. He faced great tensions, British forces continued to harass American ships, to seize cargo and impress American sailors.
8. He advocated for removing African Americans from the United States and sending them to Africa.

EXERCISE 2.33

1. 1692
2. 1502
3. 1775
4. 1781.
5. 1499
6. 1493
7. 1773
8. 1492
9. 1777
10. 1776
11. 1781.

EXERCISE 2.34
Fill in the chart:

Purpose of the establishment	Name of the colony
religious freedom	New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, Pennsylvania,
political reasons	New Hampshire, New York, Delaware, Georgia
economic reasons	New Hampshire, Connecticut, North and South Carolina, Georgia
to become richer	Virginia, Maryland, New Jersey,

EXERCİSE 2.35

Find out the exact year of the given event and number the following facts in correct time order.

1. Amerigo Vespucci participated in the second and third expeditions of Christopher Columbus. (1492)
2. Columbus led a new expedition, which already consisted of a serious fleet. (1493)
3. Amerigo Vespucci set off on a long journey himself. (1499)
4. During Vedovskie trials 19 women and relatives were executed or died in prison. (1692)
5. The famous "Boston Tea Party" took place. (1773)
6. The British were subjected to massive shelling near Lexington. (1775)
7. Congress adopted the Declaration of Independence. (1776)
8. The "Articles of Confederation" adopted by Congress gave the states greater rights. (1777)
9. The British were blocked from the sea by the French fleet. (1781)
10. The delegates of the First Congress gathered for the Second Continental Congress. (1781)

MODULE 3

EXERCISE 3.3

Fill in the gaps with the suitable words and expressions:

1. Constitution.
2. the military, all federal taxes, printing money, trade.
3. Supreme Court. 9 judges, chairman.
4. commander-in-chief.

5. Congress.
6. 1787, federal.
7. Veto, overturn.
8. President, Congress, Supreme Court.
9. Ambassadors, U.S. Cabinet, judges, the Senate.
10. U.S. Supreme Court, trial.

EXERCISE 3.4

Mark *true* or *false,* correct the *false* statements:

1. True.
2. False. The Senate is elected according to a majoritarian system, where senators are elected by a relative majority of votes.
3. True.
4. False. It is the upper house of the U.S. Congress. It has 100 members, two from each of the 50 states.
5. False. The period of service is 6 years. 1/3 of the senators are re-elected every two years.
6. True.
7. True.
8. False. Each state has two senators who have equal weight when voting for certain decisions.
9. False. The President of the U.S. Senate is the Vice President of the country, but his participation in voting is limited only to those cases when the votes of senators are equally divided.
10. False. There are currently 57 Democratic representatives, 41 Republican representatives, and 2 senators in the United States Senate, serving independently from the country's two major parties.
11. True.
12. False. The number of seats in the House remains unchanged and amounts to 435 seats, although by decision of Congress the number of state representatives in this body of the U.S. government can be adjusted.
13. False. Each state representative serves two years and can be re-elected an unlimited number of times.
14. False. In twenty-four states, this legislative body is called the “state legislature.”
15. True.

EXERCISE 3.5

Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. The U.S. House of Representatives is headed by a *Speaker*, who is elected directly by the members of the House.
2. The U.S. House of *Representatives* has many committees that deal with such issues as agriculture, military affairs, education and labor, energy and trade, natural resources, small business, housing administration, and so on.
3. The U.S. House of Representatives is being formed on more democratic principles than the upper house of *Congress*, that is, the Senate.
4. Members of the lower house of the U.S. Parliament are usually called *congressmen*, and they always interact closely with their constituents.
5. There are also such isolated names as the *Legislative* Assembly and the General Council.
6. The majority are members of the *Democratic* Party.
7. The terms of office of representatives of the legislative assembly also differ. They usually last *two* or four years.
8. The U.S. legislative sessions are much shorter than those held in the U.S. Congress. State legislative assemblies resolve the backlog of issues within *1-2* months of work.

EXERCISE 3.7

Mark *true* or *false*, correct the *false* statements:

1. False. Unlike many other states, in the United States, executive power is exercised by the President. It is independent and uncontrolled by Congress.
2. True.
3. False. The President is elected for a term of 4 years.
4. True.
5. False. He can delegate to the Vice President a number of public duties, which he will carry out on behalf of the immediate head of state.
6. False. He takes office on the same day as the President, namely January 20 of the year following the election year.
7. False. The vice president takes an oath of office, but it is not specified in the constitution.
8. True.
9. True.
10. False. However, the greatest volume of powers of the U.S. President is concentrated precisely in granting him full executive power.
11. False. In this capacity, the president manages a huge executive apparatus and makes decisions on the appointment of state officials.

12. False. The President has the right to block any bills adopted by the U.S. Congress.
13. True.
14. False. The U.S. presidential election takes place in December, and he takes office on January 20 of the following year after taking the presidential oath.

EXERCISE 3.8

Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. US Presidents, in accordance with the *Constitution*, have an extensive set of powers.
2. This election system was formalized in *1789* after the U.S. Constitution was adopted by all thirteen states that then existed in *1787*.
3. The reason for the adoption of its own constitution was the victory in the American War of *Independence*.
4. *Great Britain* recognized the independence of the States, and its army units left the territory of the country that was now no longer a colony.
5. The election of the U.S. Vice President takes place *in parallel* with the presidential elections.
6. He is chosen from the *same political party* as the head of state himself. The second person in the country must be chosen from another state.
7. A person elected to the post of Vice President of the United States is subject to the same requirements as those applying for the presidency. He must be over *35* years of age, born in the U.S., resided in this country for at least *14* years.
8. While the number of presidential terms in the United States is limited to *two*, the vice president can be elected an unlimited number of times.
9. Previously, in the United States, the posts of president and vice president were held by people from *opposing* political parties.
10. George Washington *did not belong to any party*. There was no longer any precedent in U.S. history for a non-partisan person to lead the country.

EXERCISE 3.9

Fill in the gaps with the suitable words and expressions:

1. mid-19th.
2. from 1832 to 1856. the Democrats and Republicans.
3. the Vice President.
4. the vice president.
5. the vice-presidential.
6. the same.

7. the Constitution, national security, international relations and interaction between the legislative and executive branches.
8. international agreements, appointing ambassadors, government representatives.
9. Supreme Court, the Senate.

EXERCISE 3.11

Complete the sentences with the suitable words and expressions:

1. …… certain internal political functions, for example, publishing laws.
2. …… the Bureau of Democracy, Human Rights and Labor.
3. …… the 4th person in the state.
4. …… secretary of state, who changes after one presidential term.
5. …… by the President and confirmed by the Senate.
6. …… employees of diplomatic missions.
7. …… the Assistant Secretary of State of the United States.

EXERCISE 3.13

Mark *true,* or *false*. Correct the *false* statements:

1. True.
2. False. As for the autonomy of case selection, out of approximately 100,000 annual appeals filed with the Supreme Court, no more than 1% are accepted for consideration.
3. False. The plurality opinion means that the decision that will be rendered is that which is supported by the majority of the justices on the winning side.
4. True.
5. True.
6. False. Congress has the power to try executive and judicial officers for misconduct and to remove them from office.
7. True.
8. False. The courts have the power of judicial review, under which they can declare laws or executive acts to exceed the powers of the Constitution.

EXERCISE 3.15

Mark *true* or *false,* correct the *false* statements:

1. False. The U.S. Republican Party experienced a real defeat after Democrat Franklin Roosevelt, who led the country for 12 years, from 1933 to 1945, became president.

2. True.
3. False. The Republican Party really gained strength in the late 1970s, when former Hollywood actor Ronald Reagan became president.
4. False. According to statistics, Republicans are supported by 55% of the U.S. population.
5. True.
6. False. Members of the Republican Party vote to strengthen the country's security and increase military spending, they reject pacifism and fight international terrorism.
7. True.
8. False. Today, the main electorate of the U.S. Republican Party is people of retirement age, white men, religious Americans and residents of rural areas.
9. False. The founders of the U.S. Democratic Party are several major politicians, including Thomas Jefferson (3rd U.S. President), Andrew Jackson (7th U.S. President) and Martin Van Buren (8th U.S. President).
10. False. The founding date of U.S. Democratic Party is considered to be 1828.
11. True.
12. False. The South lost the war, slavery was abolished, and the U.S. Democratic Party was in decline for almost 40 years after the defeat.
13. False. Until 1912, the ruling party in the country was the Republican Party.
14. True.
15. False.

EXERCISE 3.16

Match the words and their explanations:

1.	E
2.	G
3.	D
4.	I
5.	L
6.	B
7.	F
8.	A
9.	K
10.	C
11.	J
12.	H

EXERCİSE 3.17

	the Legislative	**the Executive**	**the Judicial**
1. What does it consist of?	The House of Representatives, the Senate	The President	The Supreme Court
2. What are its responsibilities?	writing, changing and passing bills	may sign or veto any bill.	may disprove any law signed by the President.
3. How are they appointed?	Are elected by people	Is elected by people	the executive branch allocates the spokesmen of the judicial branch
4.What are its functions?	regulation of the state taxation system; regulation of trade issues between U.S. states; regulation of issues of the formation and activities of the armed forces, etc.	Approval of legislative decisions; appointment to senior government positions; peace treaties, executive appointments.	cases involving ambassadors, ministers in the United States; disputes involving the U.S. government; controversies between the U.S. states; bankruptcy cases, etc.

EXERCİSE 3.18

Compare the below given facts about the Senate and the House of Representatives

Facts	**the Senate**	**the House of Representatives**
Number of Members	100	435
Number of Members Per State	2	based on population
Length of Term	6 years	2 years
Number of Terms	unlimited	9 years
Age Requirement	30	25
Citizenship Requirement	must live in the state at least for the last 9 years	must be a citizen at least for 7 years
Leadership	Vice President	Speaker
Function	long-term policy	short-term issues
Fields of ratification	presidential appointments	tax and budget bills

Constituency	whole state	individual district
Election	by the people of the state	by the people of the congressional district state

MODULE 4

EXERCISE 4.3

Complete the sentences with the suitable words and expressions:

1. …….. the number of states, the stripes - rays of light from the sun.
2. …….. “Annuit Coeptis” (“It favors our undertakings”).
3. In 1818 Congress ……..
4. …….. the Great Seal, on which the bald eagle spreads its wings.
5. …….. means "Out of many, one", and speaks of the unity of the nation created from 13 colonies.
6. ……., President’s Memorials, Arlington National Cemetery, and Mount Rushmore.
7. …….. a power that is great both in war and in peace.
8. …….. "A New Order of the Ages."
9. …….. parliamentary power and the Supreme Court building in Washington.
10. …….. red stands for courage and valor, white stands for innocence and purity, and blue stands for justice, perseverance and vigilance.

EXERCISE 4.5

Mark *true* or *false,* correct the *false* statements:

1. False. Americans consider that being direct is the best way to get into communication, and often, it is the main way to be “heard”.
2. True.
3. False. After World War II, the meaning of the American dream changed. The goal reached some social standard.
4. False. Winning is an American obsession. If you are the winner you are appreciated highly.
5. True.
6. True.
7. False. It is significant for them to think that America is a welcoming place for people who want freedom, opportunity, and democracy.
8. False. American community is based on the idea that “all men are created equal”, while there are quite many differences like economic, social, and cultural variety throughout the U.S.

9. True.
10. False. Individualism usually means being self-sufficient, with environment and assistance from government in different fields.

EXERCISE 4.6
Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. of pragmatism
2. of Protestantism.
3. Conglomerate, single.
4. customs and traditions
5. social and spiritual strata.
6. knowledge, traditions, customs.
7. to form a language of communication.
8. (Farmers, laborers, ethnic minorities), in the philistine.
9. superficial.
10. of self-expression.
11. spontaneous, sincere.
12. everyday life, high adaptive capacity.

EXERCISE 4.7
Fill in the chart

National Symbol	Year of appearance	Description	Symbol
The Flag	1777	With 13 Stars and Stripes	number of states,
The Great Seal	1782	bald eagle spreading its wings	independence of the nation
The Liberty Bell	1752	The ringing bell	the Declaration of Independence
Uncle Sam	The early 19th century	A gray-haired man with a top hat	Federal government
the White House	1800	A huge white building	the presidential official residence
the Capitol	1800	U.S Congress building	parliamentary power
Statue of Liberty	1886	A draped woman holding a torch	a universal symbol of freedom and democracy

EXERCISE 4.9

Fill in the gaps with suitable words and expressions.

1. 19th century.
2. 13 red and white, 13 colonies.
3. stockings for gifts.
4. In 1789, George Washington.
5. In 1916, Woodrow Wilson.
6. president and vice-president.
7. "I Have a Dream", Lincoln Monument, in 1963.
8. Monday of May, 1967.
9. Gregorian calendar.
10. 1865, 1862.
11. 1492, of 90, of Guanahani.
12. Arlington National Cemetery, Unknown Soldier.
13. old man, baby.
14. Pantomime Parade and the Tournament of Roses.
15. of witches, vampires.

EXERCISE 4.11

Mark *true* or *false,* correct the *false* statements:

1. False. The Pantomime Parade is a 10-hour show that was organized by *Irish* immigrants in Philadelphia.
2. True.
3. True.
4. False. For his important contribution to the democratization of American society, Martin Luther King was awarded the Nobel Peace Prize in *1964*.
5. False. There are still disputes about the origin of the holiday, but Americans are inclined to believe that the first Thanksgiving Day was celebrated by English colonists on the Plymouth plantations in *Massachusetts* in the fall of *1621*.
6. True.
7. False. In a poll conducted by the Associated Press, *70%* of African-American adults said that much more needs to be done to achieve equal treatment of whites and African-Americans by law enforcement agencies in the country.
8. True.
9. False. According to one version, in the 19th century, Irish immigrants brought the holiday to the United States, where it has been celebrated since *1846*.
10. False. Ramadan displays this diversity in many ways, including the food prepared for early morning *suhoor* and sunset *iftar* meals.

EXERCISE 4.12

Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. Sweets.
2. Martin Luther King.
3. In 1937.
4. In 1971, on May 30.
5. Virginia.
6. Abraham Lincoln.
7. 1776.
8. 1777.
9. Buddha.
10. three.
11. November, 1926.
12. harvest.
13. October 31.

EXERCISE 4.14

Match the words and their explanations:

1. D
2. F
3. C
4. I
5. K
6. H
7. A
8. E
9. J
10. B
11. G
12. L

EXERCISE 4.17

Fill in the chart answering the questions about holidays:

Questions	Thanksgiving Day	Ramadan Holiday	Christmas Day	Halloween Day
When did the holiday begin?	In the fall of 1621	In the 7^{th} century	2 thousand years ago	2 thousand years ago

What group(s) of people celebrated this holiday first?	English colonists on the Plymouth plantations	Muslims	Christians	ancient Celts.
What is the meaning of the holiday?	celebration of a rich harvest and thanking the Almighty.	trying to build a stronger connection with the Quran, helping poor and homeless people	commemorating the birth of Christ.	It represents the contact between the spiritual and physical world and between the living and the dead.
When do Americans celebrate it nowadays?	fourth Thursday of November	On the last day of Ramadan and first day of Shaban	December 25	on October 31
What do people do to celebrate this holiday?	go to church, several generations of the same family gather for a festive dinner at the home of their elders, say words of gratitude and thanks.	go to mosques, gather together at the home of their elders, exchange gifts.	exchange gifts, prepare a variety of treats and congratulate friends and neighbors.	prepare unusual costumes, children wear costumes, go begging for sweets from neighboring houses, say – "Trick or Treat!"
What is the symbol of this holiday?	Stuffed turkey, pumpkin pie	Suhoor and iftar meals, reading, Quran, praying, etc.	fir tree, stockings, Christmas cards, etc.	Ghost, wizard, witch, pumpkin, bar, vampire, etc.

.

EXERCİSE 4.18

Answer the following questions about the three branches of government.

Holiday	Date of Celebration	Purpose
New Year's Day	January 1	the celebration of the calendar new year
Martin Luther King, Jr. Day	the third Monday in January	the remembrance of the civil rights leader's birthday
Inauguration Day	January 20	the newly elected president and vice-president are sworn
Washington's Birthday	third Monday in February	celebration of the first president of the United States
Memorial Day	Last Monday in May	dedication to the memory of all U.S. Armed forces
Flag day	June 14	Expressing respect to the flag
Independence Day	July 4	commemoration the signing of the Declaration of Independence
Columbus Day	Second Monday in October	arrival of the Christopher Columbus in the Americas.
Veterans Day	November 11	remembrance of all U.S. military veterans
Thanksgiving Day	Fourth Thursday in November	thanking Almighty
Christmas Day	December 25	commemorating the birth of Christ.
Emancipation Day	June 19	commemoration the abolition of slavery
Easter Day	variable	the resurrection of Jesus Christ.
Halloween	October 31	respect to the dead

EXERCISE 4.21

Find and correct the mistakes:

1. G. Washington's.
2. from 1861 to 1865.
3. December 2005.
4. three separate music 'Halls of Fame'.
5. in mines, factories.
6. the Civil Rights Act, which prohibited discrimination based on race, color, gender, or ethnicity, and the Voting Rights Act, which prohibits racial discrimination in voting.

7. Boxer, modern boxing.
8. on July 20, 1969.
9. to Mikhail Gorbachev.
10. modern day horror movies.

EXERCISE 4.22

Complete the sentences with the suitable words and expressions:

1. ……., which claimed the liberation of slaves in 10 Confederate states.
2. ……., 500 live appearances, many of them sold out shows.
3. ……., him the title "Father of His Country."
4. ……., of mass production technique.
5. ……, American public speaking community as the best in the 20th century.
6. ……., "Honorary Doctorate", "World Boxing Hall of Fame Induction Award", etc.
7. ……., to break from the Kingdom of Great Britain and form a new nation.

EXERCISE 4.23

Mark *true* or *false* and correct the *false* statements.

1. True.
2. False. Lincoln has been characterized as "a classical liberal" of the 19th-century, and is well-regarded for his courses maintaining trade and business.
3. False. In July 1991 Clinton was appointed as the Democratic presidential candidate.
4. False. When Franklin Roosevelt was elected President in 1933, more than 15 million Americans were unemployed.
5. False. Washington was appointed Commander-in-Chief of the Continental Army during the American Revolutionary War.
6. True.
7. True.
8. False. King delivered a speech called "I have a dream", calling for equality in the rights of the black and white population of the United States.
9. True.
10. False. Neil Armstrong was awarded various honors, including the Presidential Medal of Freedom, the Congressional Gold Medal.
11. False. In 1955 Disney opened a park in southern California called *Disneyland*.

EXERCISE 4.25

1. C) from 1861 to 1865.
2. A) Illinois deputation.
3. B) 1856.
4. D) Franklin Roosevelt.
5. A) Clinton's.
6. B) 10 Confederate.
7. B) From 1986 to 1987.
8. D) Mikhail Gorbachev.
9. B) American Revolutionary War.
10. C) Vice President.
11. C) second.
12. D) outlawing child labor.
13. A) France and Britain.

EXERCISE 4.27

Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. John Steinbeck and Ernest Hemingway.
2. Miller.
3. Poe's famous short stories.
4. "The Old Man and the Sea".
5. "An American Tragedy".
6. "Of Mice and Men".
7. "The Great Gatsby".
8. "East of Eden".
9. Dreiser.
10. "An American Tragedy".

EXERCISE 4.28

Fill in the gaps with suitable words and expressions:

1. The National Medal of Arts, the Tony Award, and the Kennedy Center Honor.
2. Sherlock Holmes.
3. John Steinbeck, Raymond Carver and Charles Bukowski.
4. both fiction and non-fiction genre.
5. 1962.
6. combining as they do sympathetic humor and deep social perception."
7. "Adventures of Huckleberry Finn".
8. pre-Civil War America.

9. “East of Eden".
10. “The Financier” and “The Titan”.

EXERCISE 4.29

Mark *true* or *false,* correct the *false* statements:

1. False. Poe’s poetry has affected many poets, particularly in terms of structure, promoting the development of American Romantic poetry.
2. True
3. False. *A Farewell to Arms* describes the cruelty of war, the passing character of love and courage. The novel points to the way how war demolishes one’s personal life emotionally.
4. True.
5. True
6. False. Together with his writing, Twain was an influential public speaker. He gave lectures throughout the United States and Europe, amusing audiences with his humorous anecdotes, deep observations, and social commentary.
7. False. Twain’s personal experiences, including his relations with African Americans in the South, deeply influenced his views.
8. False. Poe’s works are defined with launching the detective genre, especially through his character C.Auguste Dupin in stories like "The Murders in the Rue Morgue".
9. True
10. False. "An American Tragedy" investigates themes of ambition, class struggle, and the American Dream, illustrating the destroying consequences of a system that estimates success more than morality.

EXERCISE 4.31

Fill in the chart

Name	Century he lived	Topics he mentioned	Genre	Directions
Arthur Miller	XX	Individuals, society, guilt, obligation,	Play, screenplay, drama	playwright, critic, essayist
Edgar Allan Poe	XIX	lonely emotional effect, melancholy, obsession, and grief	Short story, detectives	writer, poet, and literary critic

Ernest Hemingway	XIX-XX	war, love, deprivation, and existential battle.	novels and short stories.	novelist, journalist., and short story writer.
F. Scott Fitzgerald	XIX-XX	Difficulties of life	novels and short stories.	novelist, essayist
Jack London	XIX-XX	survival process, individualism, instincts of living beings.	adventure novels.	author, social activist, journalist
John Steinbeck	XX	social equity, human misery, and the position of the low class	novel	author, documentary writer
Mark Twain	XIX-XX	Morality, human life.	adventure novels.	Humorist, author, public speaker
Theodore Dreiser	XIX-XX	deeper aspects of human society.	novels	Novelist, journalist

REFERENCES

1. American Culture. By Deshan Mendis. Last updated on August 11, 2023. https://shorelight.com/student-stories/culture-of-usa/
2. American Society: How It Really Works. Wright E.O., Rogers J. - 2023.
3. Browne, R.B. Popular Culture and the Expanding Consciousness / R.B. Browne. – New York, Wiley,1973. – 200 p.
4. Country study. Sirojova Z.N., Ubaydullayeva D.F. Bukhara, -2023. 120 p.
5. Ferguson Th. The Myth of America‘s Turn to the Right. – The Atlantic Monthly. – 1986. – May. – vol. 257. – No 5. – pp. 43-53. – Retrieved March 11, 2013.
6. Geography & Travel in United States https://www.britannica.com/place/United-States
7. Geography of the United States of America https://www.thoughtco.com/geography-the-united-states-of-america-1435745
8. Grigsby, E. Analyzing Politics: An Introduction to Political Science – Cengage Learning, 2014.
9. https://azertag.az/ru/xeber/v_ssha_otmechayut_den_martina_lyutera_kinga-1690295
10. https://azertag.az/ru/xeber/v_ssha_otmechayut_den_osvobozhdeniya_ot_rabstva-2184701
11. https://bestdiplomats.org/largest-rivers-in-the-usa/
12. https://geographyofrussia.com/ssha/
13. https://hatamatata.ru/b/politiceskaia-sistema-ssa/
14. https://it.usembassy.gov/on-ramadan-in-america/
15. https://licey.net/free/5-angliiskii_yazyk/15-sochineniya_na_angliiskom_yazyke/stages/465-tradicii__obychai_i_osobennosti_amerikanskoi_zhizni___traditions__customs_and_peculiarities_of_american_life.html#google_vignette
16. https://shorelight.com/student-stories/culture-of-usa/
17. https://tricycle.org/article/vesak-white-house/
18. https://uslawessentials.com/what-is-a-plurality-opinion/)
19. https://wiccgroup.com/how-americans-celebrate-halloween-in-the-us/
20. https://www.americanrivers.org/river/cape-fear-river/
21. https://www.americanrivers.org/river/connecticut-river/
22. https://www.americanrivers.org/river/deep-river/
23. https://www.americanrivers.org/river/dolores-river/
24. https://www.americanrivers.org/river/edisto-river/
25. https://www.americansky.co.uk/travel-inspiration/top-10-lakes-in-america

26. https://www.bbc.co.uk/bitesize/guides/zmc6fg8/revision/9
27. https://www.bbc.com/russian/features-64295875
28. https://www.bloomberg.com/graphics/2020-us-supreme-court-liberal-conservative-makeup/
29. https://www.britannica.com/place/Great-Lakes/Fishing-and-recreation
30. https://www.ducksters.com/geography/us_states/us_lakes.php
31. https://www.golosameriki.com/a/juneteenth-history-culture-politics/7143724.html
32. https://www.nytimes.com/article/indigenous-peoples-day.html
33. https://www.usa.gov/inauguration
34. https://www.usatoday.com/story/graphics/2023/06/10/flag-day-2023-celebration-explained/70273035007/
35. https://www.usatoday.com/story/news/2024/06/14/presidential-quotes-us-america/74001697007/)
36. https://www.viza-usa.ru/info/prazdniki/Christmas.html
37. https://www.viza-usa.ru/info/prazdniki/Columbus_Day.html
38. https://www.vizausa.ru/info/prazdniki/Den_veteranov__okonchanie_pervoy_mirovoy_voyny.html
39. https://www.viza-usa.ru/info/prazdniki/flag-day.html
40. https://www.viza-usa.ru/info/prazdniki/Halloween.html
41. https://www.viza-usa.ru/info/prazdniki/Independence_Day.html
42. https://www.viza-usa.ru/info/prazdniki/memorial-day.html
43. https://www.viza-usa.ru/info/prazdniki/New_Year.html
44. https://www.viza-usa.ru/info/prazdniki/Pasha.html
45. https://www.viza-usa.ru/info/prazdniki/Thanksgiving_Day.html
46. https://www.whyislam.org/americanmuslims/
47. История изучения языков Америки, Этнография – Народы Америки: [Electronic resource] / Pasadena. URL: http://lib7.com/amerika/956-jazuki-izych-amerika.html.
48. Kirn E. About the USA. Washington, DC. – 1989. - 136 p.
49. Language Spoken at Home by the U.S. Population, 2010 // American Community Survey. – U.S. Census Bureau in World Almanac and Book of Facts, 2012. – P. 615.
50. Lafitskii V. I.; Zhidkov O. A. (ed.) *Soedinennye Shtaty Ameriki. Konstitutsiia i zakonodatel'nye akty* [United States of America. Constitution and legislation]. Moscow, Progress: Univers Publ., 1993, 765 p..
51. Maugh II (July 12, 2012) Who was first? New info on North America‘s earliest residents. – Los Angeles Times. Los Angeles County, California: Los Angeles Times. – Retrieved February 25, 2015.
52. Nick Hayes (November 6, 2009). Looking back 20 years: Who deserves credit for ending the Cold War? // MinnPost. – 2009.

53. North America: Physical Geography https://education.nationalgeographic.org/resource/north-america-physical-geography/
54. Qaziyeva, M.Y. This is America / M.Y.Qazıyeva, M.M. Zohrab. – Bakı: Elm və təhsil, – 2010. – 176 s.
55. Rand, A. The Morality of Individualism / A. Rand. – The Ayn Rand Institute. Los – Angeles, 1992. – pp. 36-4
56. Robert D. Kaplan Earning the Rockies: How Geography Shapes America‘s Role in the World. – Random House Pbl., 2017. – 224 p.
57. Scheb John M. An Introduction to the American Legal System. – Florence, KY: Delmar. 2002. – Retrieved April 17, 2015. – 496 p. United States. Encyclopedia – Britannica. – Retrieved January 31, 2013.
58. Smelser, N.J. America Becoming: Racial trends and their consequences / N.J.Smelser, W.J.Wilson, M.Faith. – Washington, D.C.: National Academy Press, – 2001. – 530 p.
59. Wallander Celeste A. Western Policy and the Demise of the Soviet Union // Journal of Cold War Studies, 2003. – vol. 5. – Issue 4. – pp. 137-177.
60. Traditions, customs and peculiarities of American life. https://licey.net/free/5-angliiskii_yazyk/15-sochineniya_na_angliiskom_yazyke/stages/465-tradicii__obychai_i_osobennosti_amerikanskoi_zhizni___traditions__customs_and_peculiarities_of_american_life.html#google_vignette
61. United States (US) Geography https://www.countryreports.org/country/unitedstatesofamerica/geography.htm
62. United States Geography https://study.com/learn/lesson/geography-united-states-overview-facts.html
63. United States. CIA – NY Press. – Retrieved June 10, 2016. Early History, Native Americans, and Early Settlers in Mercer County. Mercer County Historical Society. – Archived from the original on March 10, 2005. – Retrieved April 6, 2016.
64. United States Geography https://www.legendsofamerica.com/united-states-geography/
65. USA GEOGRAPHY https://www.3dgeography.co.uk/usa-geography
66. Б.Д. Козенко, Г.Н. Севостьянов. История США. Учебное пособие. Самара. 1994.s.14-19.
67. Голицинский Ю.Б. The United States of America. – СПб.: Каро, 2015.
68. Географическое положение и состав территории https://www.yaklass.ru/p/geografiya/7-klass/severnaia-amerika-403478/ssha-485959/re-463e68e4-9397-45e8-9ed5-7a922dce07e1
69. География США https://prousa.info/geografia

70. География США.
71. https://usa-info.com.ua/geography/geography.html#google_vignette
72. Культура Америки. Иллюстрированная мини энциклопедия. Том V.
73. https://www.pdx.edu/russian-flagship/sites/russianflagship.web.wdt.pdx.edu/files/2021-07/2017__American_Encyclopedia_RUS413.pdf
74. ПОПУЛЯРНАЯ КУЛЬТУРА США: АКСЕОЛОГИЧЕСКИЙ АСПЕКТ © Рахимова М.В. Surgut State Pedagogical University, Surgut http:///populyarnaya-kultura-ssha-akseologicheskiy-aspekt.pdf
75. Рахимова М.В. Популярная культура США: аксеологический аспект. Surgut State Pedagogical University, Surgut. https://populyarnaya-kultura-ssha-akseologicheskiy-aspekt.pdf
76. США. География, описание и характеристики https://xn----8sbiecm6bhdx8i.xn1ai/%D0%A1%D0%BE%D0%B5%D0%B4%D0%B8%D0%BD%D1%91%D0%BD%D0%BD%D1%8B%D0%B5%20%D0%A8%D1%82%D0%B0%D1%82%D1%8B%20%D0%90%D0%BC%D0%B5%D1%80%D0%B8%D0%BA%D0%B8.html
77. Томахин, Г. Д. Америка через американизмы / Г.Д.Томахин. – Москва: Высшая школа, – 1982. – 256 с.

APPENDICES

Appendix 1.1.
Canyons

Grand Canyon is the most detectable in Arizona. The canyon has characteristic descending slopes, as if consisting of several layers of rock. The depth of the layers is almost 2 thousand meters, the width is 30 km, and the length is 450 km. Such huge parameters are because of the fact that this canyon began to form nearly 18 million years ago. Its emergence is due to the fact that the direction of the river flow has been changed in the result of the tectonic activity of the highland.

Oak Creek Canyon is the "younger brother" of the Grand Canyon, due to it in the formation of rocks. It was formed around the channel of the Zelenaya River. Its length is 20 km, width is 4 km, and its depth is 600 m. It was established 10 million years ago.

These **Great Canyons** natural attractions no longer belong to Arizona, but to Utah. The appearance of canyons in this part of the USA is associated with the junction of the Rocky Mountains and two plateaus.

Canyon Zion in the southwest, formed in the region of the Virgin River. The rocks of it have scarlet and golden-chocolate shades and Anasazi tribes are supposed to estimate this region as a hometown.

The depth of **Canyon Bryce** is 250, it is 20 km long, and it is only 5 km in width. Extraordinary geological formations because of strong winds and frosts are called hoodoos. The rocks have white, red and orange shades. The Paiute Indians have been settled in this region for a long time. There is a grand national park here, the largest canyon of which is known as Cataract. The length of this part is 75 km.

A series of **Canyon lands** in southeastern Utah were formed by the bed of the Colorado and the Green River. There is a whole national park here, the largest canyon of which is the Cataract. The length of the latter is 75 km.

Canyon Horseshoe or Barrier Canyon is an object from the Canyon lands Park, washed by the Green River. The oldest rock carvings were found on the slopes of this canyon.

Nine Mile Canyon with a length of 60 km, having not only petroglyphs on the slopes, but also cave resolutions, well houses. The Yute tribes have long resided here.

Appendix 1.2.
Mountains

The Appalachians stretch from northeast to southwest and consist of two large plateaus: Cumberland in the south and Allegheny in the north. The mountain system is of 2600 km length. In the northwest of the mainland, Alaska is formed from branches of the Cordillera. It should also be noted the Hawaiian archipelago with a large number of underground and underwater volcanoes

The territory of the USA is formed by mountain systems of corrugations and highlands. The largest plateau of the Cordillera system provides the USA with a great deal of mountains that go from height to deep spreading to the complete west. Mountains occupy the space from Alaska to California. The chain grows for 1,700 km, and its width reaches the same figure in some places. Thus, the Cordillera Mountains occupy a third of the United States, and the rest of the mountains are the Appalachians and ancient hills that have already turned into plateaus. In the northern and eastern part of America, the mountain peaks are covered with forests. The highest mountains are glaciated. Between the mountains in the hollows there is a Mediterranean kind of flora.

Appalachian mountain system slopes to the east of the country, running through Massachusetts, New York, Ohio, Georgia, Alabama and numerous other states. The northern Appalachians are plateaus, the highest point of which is 400 meters. Here the highest are the White and Green Mountains, paralleled with Longfellow and Adirondack. It was here that **Mount Mitchell** was once established, and behind it – a Large Valley and the Appalachian Plateau [10].

In the Cordillera system, the **Rocky Mountains** backbone extends for 4.5 thousand km. In the south, the mountains begin in New Mexico, gradually descending and expanding to Utah. The main part of the large Rocky Mountains is embraced in Colorado. Here, the highest peak of the region is Mount Albert with a height of 4.5 thousand meters above the sea.

Different minerals are very characteristic of the **Rocky Mountains**, since minerals as gold, silver, copper, and lead are popular there. Furthermore, a national park has been established on this territory, preserving thermals and geysers of the highlands. **Pacific Mountains** are mountain ranges along the

coast of the US. The system begins in the north, where Mount Olympus ascends 2.4 thousand meters in Washington. The western parts of these mountains descend into the ocean.

Appendix 1.3.
Rivers

1) Mississippi River

The Mississippi River is the largest in the north of America, embracing over 1.2 million square miles. Besides being a geographical wonder, the Mississippi River is significant to American culture and the country's economy with its prominent winding path and powerful flowing.

The Mississippi River has been decisive in defining the course of American history. It proceeded as a significant channel for transportation, contributing the flow of people and goods and promoting the development of towns and businesses along its sides.

The Mississippi River is crucial to Americans inspiriting people of art besides its economic importance. Its tolerating circulation appeal and beauty have been seized in countless literary, artistic, and musical creations, as a timeless representation of the American spirit.

Even in the face of barriers like pollution and floods, the Mississippi River continues to animate pride and tension across the country. Its vast watershed maintains as a home to innumerable plant and animal variety, promoting a wide diversification of ecosystems and biodiversity. The Mississippi River never thrills to suffer and captivate people while ministering as a steady reminder of the power of nature and the buoyant spirit of the American West.

2) Missouri River

The Missouri River is the second-longest in North America, expanding over 529,350 square miles. This huge river rises in the beautiful Rocky Mountains of western Montana and excises its way through the heartland of the United States with unfaltering strength and definition. Along the way, it passes through seven states and the rocky Great Plains until coming together with the Mighty Mississippi River close to St. Louis, Missouri.

This immense river has been significant to commerce, research, and shipping throughout American history. The celebrated Lewis and Clark expedition passed across its waters, impacting the direction of westward transfer in the early 19th century. The Missouri River is still an essential resource for many cities today, supporting industry, agriculture, and leisure activities.

In spite of facing multiple issues such as contamination, habitat degradation, and capping, the Missouri River continues to be a representation of persistence and power. Multiple plant and animal varieties can find shelter in its enormous watershed, which is refuge to many varieties of ecosystems and biodiversity.

3) Rio Grande

The Rio Grande River covers about 336,000 square miles and is a river of great natural beauty and cultural importance that serves as a border between countries. This wonderful river grows in Colorado's San Juan Mountains and streams southward, making a part of the US-Mexico border before catching into the Gulf of Mexico.

A great number of plants and animals can be found in its lush valley, adapting well to the dry climates of northern Mexico and the American Southwest.

For those who depend on its waters, the Rio Grande keeps on streaming as a sign of hope and renovation in spite of facing problems like pollution, and water shortage. Its standing presence maintains as a reminder of the interdependence of all life and the significance of control and cooperation in the conservation of the natural heritage.

4) Yukon River

The Yukon River streams over 330,000 square miles and is a symbol of the native beauty and robust wildness of Alaska and the Yukon Territory of Canada. This solid river rises in the mountains of British Columbia and leans across vast tundra and clean woods before draining into the Bering Sea.

The Yukon River grew into a doorway to state for thousands of prospectors straining to alter their fortunes in the Yukon Territory during the Klondike Gold Rush of the late 19th century. The river's mighty streams and rapids attracted explorers from all over the world because it promised untold riches along with discouraging challenges.

Today, the wild glory and mysteries of the Yukon River still enthrall travelers and adventurers. Unmatched outdoor leisure versions are provided by its reserved and wild environment, which include fishing, rafting, wildlife viewing, and wilderness camping. The Yukon River, one of North America's remaining magnificent wild rivers, animates amazement and astonishment in everyone who watches its great waters.

5) Red River

The Red River is a significant river that runs through the center of the southern United States. It is roughly 287,500 square miles, beginning from its headwaters in the Texas Panhandle to the Atchafalaya River in Louisiana. The

Red River blows its way through differences of environments, from the lush marshes of Louisiana to the plains of Texas.

The Red River is still a magnificent resource for the towns it flows through today. Its waters sustain industry, agriculture, and leisure by offering chances for boating, fishing, and bird watching. But the river also creates some difficulties, such as erosion, deluge, and poor water quality, which claim prudent control and protection.

For the residents of the Southern United States, the Red River continues to be a representation of elasticity and vitality despite these problems. Stakeholders are collaborating and coming up with creative ways to ensure this significant river is managed encouragingly, defending its ecological integrity and cultural heritage for next generations.

6) Columbia River

The enormous Columbia River is a sign of the Pacific Northwest, flowing 258,000 square miles from its headwaters in the Canadian Rockies to its mouth at the Pacific Ocean in Oregon. The Columbia River, which streams through magnificent scenes of tall mountains, lush woods, and narrows, is more than just a river, it is an integral part of the history and identity of the area.

Native Americans like the Nez Perce, Yakama, and Chinook have relied on the Columbia River for millennia as their significant beginning of food and water. The indigenous villages that expanded along its sides were shaped by the cultures and traditions of the waters, which proposed transportation, inner importance, and food. The river served as a route for business and study after European newcomers and researchers settled which resulted in the launching of fishing fellowship, agricultural communities, and fur trading centers.

Currently, the Columbia River maintains a wide range of fields in the Pacific Northwest, including transportation, hydroelectric power forming, agriculture, and recreation. It is a magnificent economic corridor. Its vessels, which include the well-known Bonneville Dam and the enormous Grand Coulee Dam, propose chances for boating, fishing, and wildlife viewing while also giving chance pure electricity and managing flooding.

Appendix 1.4.
The Great Lakes

Lake Superior is the largest of the Great Lakes embracing 31,700 square miles. Lake Superior’s maximum depth is 1,335 feet and an average depth is 483 feet. The lakes all are connected with waterways to the Atlantic Ocean through canals and the Hudson River. Many of the major cities of North

America including Cleveland, Buffalo, Chicago, Green Bay, Milwaukee, and Toronto are located on their shores.

Utah's Great Salt Lake is a magnificent natural phenomenon that comprises 950 square miles (2,460 square kilometers). The lake's spectacular ecology contributes to a varied quantity of varieties that have been used to live in a saltwater environment. It ensures essential homeland with millions of wandering birds and is a famous site for birdwatchers and environment supporters.

Crater Lake is the deepest lake in the United States at 1,943 feet deep. It is a caldera lake, indicating that it is shaped from the wrecked land at the center of a volcano. It is situated at the top of Mount Mazama in Oregon. The lake itself and the ground around the lake are advocated as part of the Crater Lake National Park.

The present format of the Great Lakes basin is the conclusion of the replacement of huge glaciers through the mid-continent, and this is a process which commenced about one million years ago. Researches in this region represent that a river system and lowlands formed by water erosion existed before the Ice Age. These massive ice pieces undoubtedly deteriorated these valleys, widening and deepening them and radically changing its drainage system.

Lake Superior, which lies in Michigan, Minnesota, Wisconsin, and Ontario, is a natural miracle of disparate grandeur. Its immensity and remarkable beauty wonder people from all around, supporting recreational activities, magnificent landscapes, and natural variety. It is known for its clear waters, mountainous shores, and rich species availability. It has a specific place in the hearts of people who live around as well as those who visit its shores. The lakes deflux roughly from west to east, draining into the Atlantic Ocean through the St. Lawrence lowlands.

Lake Michigan lies south of Lake Superior and is bordered by the Upper and Lower peninsulas of Michigan, Indiana, Illinois, and Wisconsin. Its depth is about 280 feet. The mean water level is 577 feet above sea level, and its waters drain northward into Lake Huron through a deep congestion at the Straits of Mackinac.

Lake Huron lies at the same position as Lake Michigan and is comparably larger. Its average depth is nearly 195 feet. It lies in border line with Ontario and Michigan. It is considered to be another thundering natural miracle in North America. Its coasts include a mix of sandy beaches and magnificent islands, creating varied scenery for tourists to relish.

Lake levels mainly differ about one to two feet throughout the year, the highest levels taking place in mid-summer and the lowest in late winter. There are little tides of about two inches high, but they are relevantly not important.

Currents react to quick wind changes, and their direction is established by the alteration of the Earth and the shape of the lake vessels.

The importance of the lakes for a wide spectrum of entertainment activities is priceless. Power boating and sailing have become famous activities, and different marinas have been built. Many miles of high-quality, sandy beaches expand along the lake coasts. Provincial and county lands propose a great number of camping, picnicking, and park regions for a developing tourist industry.

As North America's largest alpine lake, Tahoe forms a natural divide between California and Nevada which means variety of sunshine. As an all-round entertainment resort, Lake Tahoe is world glorious for both its winter activities and summer sports with a whole host of ski, trek, bike and water-based fun providing endless apologies to get outdoors and dynamic no matter when you're visiting. One of the best and longest tracks around the lake is called the Tahoe Rim trail which skirts the lake for just over 160 miles and promises some unusual views as well as a straight old invocation for your calf muscles.

Lake Tahoe is the 6^{th} largest lake by volume and is situated high in the Sierra Nevada Mountains on the boundary between California and Nevada. It is considered to be the second deepest lake after Crater Lake. The lake is major tourist gravity for both summer and winter vacation.

Famous worldwide for its improbable beauty, Lake Tahoe serves as one of the most shocking natural characters to grace both Californian and Nevadan soil. While it's naturally a wonder to contemplate, Lake Tahoe is shelter to far more than just heavy natural glory, with comforts ranging from nice casinos to waterfront dining spots to shore side bike paths.

Lake Michigan, which ranges Illinois, Indiana, Michigan, and Wisconsin, is a magnificent natural feature of the American Midwest. It is the only Great Lake wholly located in the United States, covering 22,300 square miles (57,757 square kilometers). Lake Michigan's glorious beauty, sandy beaches, and flourishing waterfront villages attract millions of visitors each year.

With rich marine systems, it provides opportunities for swimming, fishing, sailing and leisurely activities along its shores. Lake Michigan's beauty and attractiveness, differing from metropolitan waterfronts to lonely coves, make it a famous destination for natives and tourists searching for outdoor experiences and magnificent views.

Running along the boundaries of Illinois, Indiana, Wisconsin, and Michigan, the aptly named Lake Michigan serves as the greatest lake on Earth to inhabit exclusively in one country. In addition to magnificent organic sites like Indiana Dunes National Park and Sleeping Bear Dunes National Lakeshore, the Lake Michigan coast is ranged with glaring cities like Green Bay,

Milwaukee, and Chicago, suggesting visitors a possibility to mix outdoor adventure with urban investigation during their journeys.

It may be a shoal of North America's Great Lakes, but Lake Erie has a massive quantity of opportunities when it comes to both tourism and outdoor adventure. Buffalo, Cleveland, and Toledo are just a few of the legendary cities that can be investigated along the Erie shore, while amusement chances differ from fishing to bird-watching to collapse diving. The basin slopes from west to east with depths of nearly 25 feet and 210 feet, approximately. It borders the states of Michigan, New York, Ohio, and Pennsylvania, as well as Ontario in Canada, is an important natural resource for that area. With an area of nearly 10.000 square miles Lake Erie is the fourth-largest Great Lake. Its waters are vital resources for drinking, industry, and entertainment.

Lake Erie supports a unique environment, including differences of fish species and animal habitats. Its coasts are full with lively cities, villages, and marvelous parks that support a mixture of urban comforts and natural glory. Fishing, boating, birding, and swimming are popular activities along its coastlines, making it a lovely destination for both natives and tourists.

Lake Ontario which is situated between the states of New York and Ontario, Canada, being quite small is rather significant. Its waters comprise approximately 19,000 square kilometers, maintaining basic ecosystems to provide with drinking water, and to facilitate shipping.

Lake Ontario’s shorelines combine a variety of urban landscapes, glorious parks, and untouched beaches, including a difference of leisure activities for both native residents and tourists. Lake Ontario’s effect goes beyond its natural frontier lines, influencing the economies and cultures of nearby areas.

Lake of the Woods, situated on the boundary of Manitoba, Minnesota, and Ontario, is an enormous natural miracle that embraces nearly 4,500 square kilometers. This lake, known for its gorgeous beauty and number of animals, gives chances for a great number of external activities.

Its shores are full with isolated ranches, fishing resorts, and superb wilderness areas, attracting hunters, fishermen, and nature lovers all year round. With a number of islands and coves to investigate, it proposes a pacific escape from the noisy city life, giving tourists a chance to plunge themselves in nature’s quietness.

To give a conclusion, Great Salt Lake, Lake Oahe, and Lake Okeechobee make a difference of natural miracles all over the United States. From the unusual ecology of Great Salt Lake to the universal utility of Lake Oahe and the natural appropriateness of Lake Okeechobee, these lakes are unique to their native citizens.

The various purposes of the lakes are often controversy. The shipping and hydroelectric-power supplies serve higher water layers, for example, but high levels enlarge denudation of the coastlines. It is obvious that differences have occurred in the flora and fauna life of the lakes and that these alterations have been close to magnification in the content of presented chemicals, and the storage of dirty precipitation on lake bottoms near municipal regions.

Considerable changes firstly became known in 19th century parallelly to human population by the lakes. But the less known storage of venomous essences in wildlife, namely fish and fish-eating birds, had much more severe involvements. It became clear that pollution could influence either directly or indirectly all uses – increasing the cost of water usage, killing innumerable fish varieties or passing other species unsuitable to eat, and adversely influencing the tourist industry and the value of shoreline feature. Since the 1970s a main joint attempt at management has been undertaken by powerful figures in Canada and the United States, and this has concluded in effective water quality and the revival of some fish settlement.

Appendix 2.1.
Native Americans

By 1800, many of the Native Americans were obliged to leave the New York City area. Some Native Americans tried to obtain the new rules of American culture, while others failed. Few of Native Americans were able to launch reservations on Long Island and in New Jersey. During the American Revolution many Native Americans started a war with the British, hoping to abolish expansionism. Alongside with wars and the spread of infectious diseases, like measles, influenza, and smallpox affected greatly the Native Americans.

Approximately 800,000 American Indians moved to big cities during 30 years from 1950 to 1980. Native Americans continued to move into New York City in the late 90s of the last century. They were obliged to participate in the Civil Rights movement, in the demand of high self-determination, and it led to the pan-Indian movement flash.

In the late 90s of the last century as a result of increased government support, Native Americans were able to take control over schools, religious freedoms, and the traditions. Following the Civil Rights movement, many Native Americans had gained greater opportunities and chances, although some problems still existed.

A particularly wide relationship had developed between immigrants from the Great Indian peoples of America, the Iroquois and Apaches. These peoples

were engaged in agriculture and fought all the time with the Newcomers of European origin for their lands. However, from time to time, certain commercial relations arose between the natives and the arrivals, and mutual communication became possible. Indian tribes living in small residential areas, especially in South and North Dakota, Nebraska, Montana and other states, had caused some corresponding words to enter English, in accordance with the types of labor they were engaged in.

The vast majority of borrowings found at the beginning of the XVII century were borrowed from the language of the Indian tribes. The main reason for this was the need to express concepts unfamiliar to European peoples. The English language needed the use of not only aboriginal words related to flora and fauna, but also words related to their life, mythology, customs and traditions. Since the reflection of these concepts in the language could have been possible through the assimilation of the corresponding Aboriginal words into English. The concepts and objects that belonged to the original spiritual and material culture of the Aborigines were not familiar to the Newcomers. Words of this type have undergone a certain degree of phonetic and morphological assimilation and have entered the vocabulary of the language. These words semantically include the names of objects, vehicles and tools of labor related to the way of life of Indigenous Peoples.

The formation of a new way of life of Northern Americans was directly related to the new conditions encountered here by the arrivals. The visitors had to build their lives on the basis of completely new realities, to adapt to the natural and geographical conditions they faced, to look for different ways to overcome the difficulties they faced along this "path". Americans, who wanted to adapt to new living conditions and ensure their livelihood, had to learn many things from the local Indians and, as a result, formed traditions and customs corresponding to the economic conditions of the country. The same is true of other areas of the economy – cattle breeding, hunting, etc.

However, along with this, many words used in the language of local tribes entered American English and were included in the vocabulary of the language. Among the languages that influenced the formation of English in North America, the influence of Indian languages is undeniable. These Aboriginal tribes living in the Western Hemisphere were called Native Americans, American Indians, Indian tribes or Amerindians. Most of the words borrowed from the languages of these tribes entered American English in the XVII century, and later in the XVIII-XIX centuries. One of the factors that played a role in the formation of American English was related to the way of life of Native Indians. And the number of words and expressions denoting the way of

life, religious ceremonies and views of the Indians tribes, their own unique tools, weapons and other items used by them was quite large. New living conditions, natural and social conditions enriched American English at the expense of borrowed words. There were many words reflecting the way of life of the local population.

There are various approaches to the classification of Indian languages. The first of them is P.Turner's classification, in which he distinguished different languages based on the composition of the word stock. In this classification, the morphological structure of languages has been overlooked. It is for this reason that, relatively at the end of the XIX century, D.Brinton published his findings in his book “the American Race”, dedicating the main part of the book to the classification of languages. On the contrary to P.Turner's classification, the author carried out the classification precisely on the basis of the morphological structure of languages.

He classified the languages of the tribes living in America into 5 different groups. The division proposed by D.Brinton is as follows:

1. North Atlantic group
2. North Pacific group
3. Central group
4. South Pacific group
5. South Atlantic group.

Later A.Creber, F.Boas, E.Sepir and other linguists have also done considerable research in the study of the languages of American peoples. They grouped languages into 6 large groups and put forward a different classification:

1. Eskimo-Aleut
2. Algonquian-Wakash
3. Siu-Hoka
4. NaDene
5. Pentu
6. Tanoan-Aztec languages.

In Eskimo-Aleut languages, which belong to the first group and are considered poly synthetic and inflective languages, only suffixes are used, and in no case the use of prefixes is acceptable. The languages combined in this group are as follows: Aleut, Sirenikski Eskimos, Yupik, Alaskan, Nunivak, Naukanski, Inuit, Greenlandic, etc. The languages of the Algonquian-Wakash languages, which are part of the second group, are inflective and polysynthetic, as well as prefer the use of more suffixes, and a very small number of prefixes.

When one looks deeper into the morphological structure of languages, one can see that there is a wide use of intro-root suffixes, reduplication, a weak

declension system, and in many cases the formation of new words by adding suffixes to the roots of nouns and verbs. In these languages, the root of nouns is considered the main base element, and verbs formed from nouns sometimes have a derivative character, although they cannot be used freely.

Academic success of Native American students' is comparatively lower than their white counterparts. Native American students are least eager to graduate from high schools or colleges. Such organizations as the National Congress of American Indians (NCAI) give some opportunities to American Indians and Native students for better educational environment, including chances to the education respecting their cultural and language needs.

The New York State Legislature provides funding for Native American students from tribes inhabiting within the state. Students have opportunities to receive grants for their attendance at any institution in New York State.

Whereas we can conclude that "by the end of the 19th century it was widely accepted that the nation of America had a cosmopolitan origin and that the unifying character of American nationalism was neither a common past, nor common blood, but the realization of American Idea" and that "the motto of American citizens – E Pluribus Unum – emphasizes the possibility of unity that will arise out of diversity".

Appendix 2.2.
War of Independence

The British destroyed the warehouse, repelling the attacks of the Minutemen, but on the way back on April 9, 1775, they were subjected to massive shelling near Lexington and, having lost 273 people killed and wounded, fled in disgrace. The assembled regiment surrounded Boston, fortifying itself on the hills around the city. Only on the third attempt, having lost up to a thousand people, the British defeated the untrained, poorly armed colonists in a battle called the "Battle of Bunker Hill". A gigantic empire, mistress of the seas, owner of a powerful fleet and untold riches, with a skilled, well-armed army, attacked 13 colonies, which were home to a little less than 3 million people, who had neither an army nor warships. Moreover, among the population there were not only patriots (Whigs), supporters of England (Tories, or loyalists). The latter (up to 30 thousand people) fought together with the British troops or engaged in sabotage behind the lines of the patriots. Among the rebels, a radical democratic movement stood out, which set the goal of separating the colonies from England. Its leaders were S. Adams, P. Henry, R. Lee, T. Jefferson and others. On the side of evolution was the most famous

Englishman Thomas Paine who also played an exceptionally important role. In the most difficult days of the revolution, he published a pamphlet "Common Sense", in which, relying on acts, he proved that the policy of the kings - "crowned scoundrels" - left the inhabitants of the colonies no choice but to fight for independence and the creation of a democratic republic. "The dispute must be resolved by the last resource - weapons." The pamphlet sold 20 thousand copies in this small country! The center of loyalism became New York, South Carolina and Georgia, which were economically closely connected with the metropolis. Patriots feasted on the populous and economically developed states of New England, Virginia and the western territories, where farming mostly predominated. Most of the Indians helped England, which promised to preserve their lands. Some of the Egrians also supported the British, who promised liberation. But many of them both free and slaves, fought in the army of patriots and in the army of patriots. As soon as hostilities broke out, the question immediately arose about organizing the leadership of the war and the entire life of the colonies. In May 1775, almost all the delegates of the First Congress again gathered in Philadelphia for the Second Continental Congress, which met intermittently until March 1781. Having started the war, the congress hesitated in separating from England. At the meetings, endless periods passed – among the delegates there were many who hesitated, those who were afraid to lay their hands on the king.

They proposed to achieve only autonomy. The opposition of a number of states, who were afraid of severing trade ties with the mother country, also interfered. Having called the people to arms, the Congress immediately sent an "olive branch" to London – a petition to the king, in which he assured the ruler of his loyalty, although he judged "bad laws". In response, the king declared the colonies in a state of retaliation, which threatened the Americans, primarily the authors of the petition, with exile without trial. The position of the Congress was noticeably weakened by the separatism of individual colonies. They declared themselves independent states, subordinated themselves to the center and were reluctant to give it money. In 1777, these relations were enshrined in the "Articles of Confederation" adopted by Congress, which gave the states greater rights, even to the point of declaring war. Congress turned into a consultative body that existed on voluntary contributions from the states. With the creation of the army, Congress had to move forward.

At a meeting in June 1776, Virginia delegate Richard Lee stood and read the historic decision: "Resolved that these united colonies are and of right ought to be free and independent states". July 4, 1776 Congress adopted the Declaration of Independence. Since then, this day has been celebrated annually

in the United States as the main national holiday - Independence Day. The former colonies united to form the United States of America and separated from England. The second Declaration was T. Jefferson, who had the gift of expressing ideas clearly and directly. He justified the need for separation from the metropolis, pointing out numerous insults and deception on the part of England, and then outlined the basic principles of the structure of the new state.

The Declaration proclaimed the equality of all people and such inalienable human rights as "life, liberty and the pursuit of happiness." The principle of national sovereignty was recognized – the right of the people to overthrow the government that violates their rule. The Declaration protected freedom and privacy. And although, at the insistence of the planters, Jefferson removed from the text the clause condemning slavery and the slave trade, the Declaration was the most controversial state document of the 18th century. He declared the conditions necessary for the progress of bourgeois society. When the Declaration was adopted, the joy of the people knew no bounds. Its text was read in the streets and squares, bonfires were lit, shots were fired, fireworks were set off and bells were rung. Later, Congress abolished rent, noble ranks and titles, recognized squattering as legal, and introduced maximum prices for products due to increased speculation, which was later, however, abolished by the states. After 1778, the center of military action moved to the South. The English army of General Cornwallis was concentrated there, relying on local loyalists. Initially there was little success, but Washington managed, with the help of the French, to push Cornwallis back to Yorktown (Virginia). The British were blocked from the sea by the French fleet in October 19, 1781.

Successful U.S. diplomacy played an important role in its successful foreign policy. At first, the colonies were afraid to turn to other states for help, so as not to be accused of high treason. Congress asked for assistance from other English colonies and the people of Ireland. Then the leaders of the diplomatic service of Congress, although they were not experienced in the art of foreign policy, still decided to take advantage of England's contradictions with other powers. B. Franklin arrived in France with an unofficial mission. He found that the court, while hating the British, looked favorably on the American Republicans and could help them. The government of Louis XVI supported the famous playwright P.O.Beaumarchais, who organized the fictitious trading house, which supplied the Americans with weapons and supplies.

Spain also gave money for the purchase of weapons. In London they knew about Franklin's successes – there were English agents among his employees, but they could not stop him. Franklin enjoyed enormous popularity and support in Paris, although the French court avoided breaking with England. The defeat of

the British at Aratoga turned out to be a turning point: France openly opposed England, signing an agreement on alliance and trade with the United States in February 1778. Taking advantage of the predicament of George III, Spain and Holland opposed him. They launched military operations at sea such as Gibraltar, so that the British were even afraid of an invasion of their islands. The English government tried to drag Russia into the war on its side, but Empress Catherine II, responding very kindly to George II and sincerely indignant at the republican rebels in her heart, refused to let Russian soldiers go.

Moreover, Russia declared armed neutrality and helped the League of Neutrals defend the right to transport any goods except weapons on their ships. England actually found itself in international isolation and was unable to use its entire gigantic military potential against the incomparably weak America. After the capitulation at Yorktown, long and difficult negotiations began on peace, which began with the mediation of Russia and Austria. On the U.S. side, they were led by a mission of five people with the participation of the US. They were led by a mission of five people, including Franklin and J. Jay, a famous rich man and former chief judge of Tata New York. Having begun negotiations, England simultaneously began to negotiate with France and Spain on the division of the American West, when J. Jay, secretly from Franklin and the French, conducted separate negotiations with England, which sharply worsened the position of the United States. Nevertheless, the Americans were able to achieve an agreement with England on the basis of equality. It was signed in Paris on September 3, 1783. In it, England recognized the independence of the USA and the results of the War of 1775-1783 brought victory to the United States. The main thing was the faith of the American people and leaders in the sanctity of their cause and the willingness to fight to the end. Thus, the American intelligence officer Capt. Nathaniel Neil, a former 21-year-old teacher, captured by the British, exclaimed, standing in front of the gallows, that he only regretted that he could not give more than one life for the sake of victory. Among the many heroes of the war one can name the leader of the partisans J. Clark, the heroic sailor J. Jones, General Fr. Mary, nicknamed the Swamp Fox, General N. Green and others. Women also showed heroism - Mary Hayes, who helped the artillerymen and was awarded the rank of sergeant by Ashington, etc.

About 5 thousand blacks fought in the ranks of the colonists, among them Peter Salem stood out for his narrowness. An important role was played by the fact that the colonists knew their country and skillfully used the terrain. European armies were accustomed to fight in line formation so that the officer could see each soldier. The Americans used loose formation, showing initiative and skill in battle. The command and Washington himself, learning during the

battles, showed good tactical abilities and were able to unravel and thwart the enemy's plans, skillfully using the gross mistakes of the English generals, who held high positions not by talent, but by connections and proximity to the court. Of course, the Americans also had difficulties, shortcomings, and mistakes. There were also editors like Major General Benedict Arnold. Entangled in money matters, he fell into the snare of the British, surrendered Fort West Point to them, and then fled and fought against the Americans. His name is still a symbol of betrayal in America today.

In its meaning and nature, the war of independence was national liberation and revolutionary. Its main task was to liberate the American people from colonial dependence. That's why we often say "war" rather than revolution. But since during the war the elements and remnants of feudalism (like quit rent) were destroyed, freedom of property, etc. was guaranteed; it diminished the significance of the revolution, although limited in depth and scope. This revolution did not crush the "old order" again, but only its individual elements. It did not resolve such important issues as the black and Indian issues: the blacks did not receive freedom, the Indians lost their land. The life of many poor people did not improve at all, and the reason for this was the weakness and underdevelopment of democratic forces. The way has opened for the progressive capitalist development of the country. Thus, the English colonization of North America led to the independent economic, social, political and spiritual development of the colonies. A new nation arose there - the American one. Its further progress required national liberation and the elimination of the remnants of feudalism; this is what happened during the Revolutionary War or the first American Revolution. Its main result was the formation of a new state and the opening of the path for free development.

Appendix 2.3.
Constitution. The first steps of the state

Congress had legislative power and consisted of two chambers. Upper Senate - elected at meetings of local legislative bodies (much later, senators began to be elected by the population) for 6 years, but with the constant replacement of a third of the senators every two years. This is how the principle of rotation was implemented. Each state, regardless of size or population, sent two people to the Senate. The Senate confirmed appointments to various posts in the state, decided on foreign policy issues and, if necessary, could try senior government officials, up to the president, by impeaching them (ant.: charges of inappropriate behavior), which was followed by either trial or resignation. The

lower house – the House of Representatives - was elected for two years in proportion to the number of voters in each state (this principle was long disputed at the convention by representatives of small states like Maine). The functions of the alata included discussing bills, approving the budget and establishing taxes. But its decisions had to be consistent with the Senate, which had more control rights. On this occasion, an interesting conversation took place over coffee between Washington and Jefferson. The latter doubted whether the Senate was needed at all. In response, Washington asked Jefferson why he was pouring coffee on a saucer. "So that too hot coffee cools down," he answered. "Well, that's why a second chamber is needed when passing laws," Ashington concluded. Only white men, starting from the age of 21, with a certain property status enjoyed the right to vote in the country.

Women, black slaves and free poor people sought voting rights. There were also restrictions for resident candidates (it is significant that all qualification restrictions in the United States were lifted only by 1971). The Constitution established the Supreme Court - the highest court of 6 (later - 9) experienced lawyers appointed for life. For its time - the 18th century, the U.S. Constitution was the most advanced and democratic. It was in sharp contrast to the orders of absolutist Europe. Particularly important for the development of capitalism were the guarantees of property rights declared by the Constitution, including property rights. But in 1789, at the request of the majority of the population of almost all states, J. Madison formulated the first amendments to the Constitution – the famous Bill of Rights. It proclaimed freedom of speech, assembly, press, religion, personal integrity, trial by jury, the right of every American to have weapons for self-defense, etc. The bill was approved by the states in 1791.

At different times, the symbols of the new state were officially formalized. On June 14, 1777, Congress approved the national flag of the United States. This day is now celebrated as Flag Day. It was decided that the flag would have 13 stripes (seven red, alternating with six white), and in the upper left corner on a blue field there would be 13 stars according to the number of colonies – states. As the states joined the Union, the number of stars and stripes began to increase. The beauty and intent of the flag was lost, and in 1818 it was decided that there would always be 13 stripes on the white flag, and the states joining the Union would be designated only by a new star. now, as we know, there are 50 of them. The national emblem of the United States was approved on July 20, 1782. It depicts a bird - a predatory American eagle with spread wings, turning its head and holding 13 crossed arrows and an olive branch in its paws. On the eagle's chest is a shield with the colors of the national flag. In the bird's beak there is a ribbon with the inscription in Latin: E pluribus unum -

“Out of many, one”; above the head there is a rosette with 13 stars. The U.S. anthem was officially adopted on March 3, 1931. It is called “The Star-Spangled Name”. The text was written by Francis S. Key in 1814 during the second war with England. The melody was the religious psalm “Anacreon in Paradise.” Each state has its own flag, motto, anthem and symbols: bird, flower, and tree. For example, the state of Texas* has a white-red-blue flag, with a white star on a blue cross stripe; motto - “Friendship”; flower - cornflower; bird – mockingbird; tree - walnut tree; anthem - “Texas, our Texas!”.

The U.S. Constitution, although not entirely flawless, has existed without much change for 200 years, longer than any other in the world. Over 200 years, only 26 amendments were adapted to it, giving it flexibility and compliance with the changing conditions of the country's life.

And all this is due to the fact that the creators of the Constitution of 1787 soberly took into account the previous historical experience and the achievements of advanced social thought of their time, the ideas of S. Montesquieu, F. Bacon, J. Locke and so on. It was a Constitution that secured the power of a wealthy minority, but it gave constitutional guarantees of democratic rights and freedoms. “Jeffersonian democracy” and after 1800, Americans rejected this policy, electing “president of the leader of the Republicans, 57-year-old Thomas Jefferson. This wealthy planter dressed very modestly and showed up on foot for his inauguration. The famous author of the Declaration of Independence was extraordinarily gifted: scientist, architect, inventor, writer, musician, and diplomat.

One of the leaders of the American Enlightenment, a humanist and supporter of democracy, Jefferson adhered to progressive and even radical views and advocated the abolition of slavery. In conservative circles he was considered almost a Jacobin. Jefferson's name was associated with the American Dream, a social ideal in which the equality of all people was combined with universal material prosperity. That ideal, according to Jefferson, could be realized in a republic of small free farmers. But Thomas was also a prudent politician, a pragmatist who clearly understood the difference between personal ideals and harsh reality.

Focusing on the interests of the agrarian majority of the population, the interests of farmers and planters, Jefferson introduced many innovations that took into account their needs, reducing, in particular, the size of the plot that a future farmer could purchase, respectively, for a lower fee. At the same time, realizing that an agricultural country cannot develop normally, he encouraged the development of industry and trade. The National Bank and protectionist tariffs were retained, and the construction of roads and canals was developed.

Under Jefferson, an important decision was made that determined the limits of the power of Congress and the resident. The chief justice of the Supreme Court, the largest judge in America at that time, J. Marshall, held a court decision in 1803, which turned into a principle of the American political and legal system: the Supreme Court received the right to determine the compliance of adopted laws with the provisions of the Constitution. This significantly increased the authority of the Supreme Court and was a clear blow to the Federalist Party. Jefferson repealed the reactionary laws of Federalist Adams, reduced the army, navy and state apparatus. Historians had every reason to call the 8 years of his reign "Jeffersonian democracy." The "era of good agreement" has arrived. The authority of the Republicans was high; their candidates occupied the White House almost without a fight (J. Madison, 1809-1817; J. Monroe, 1817-1825). Under these presidents, the situation in the United States gradually changed. The main change was the significant growth of the industrial bourgeoisie. She outgrew the tutelage of the government and sought complete freedom from its control and the bonds imposed on her by the financiers grouped around the National Bank. Industrialists demanded serious changes in domestic policy. The question arose about the expansion and capture of new lands in the West, and this entailed the solution of an even more pressing question – about slavery: will it spread everywhere, or will the farmers and the urban bourgeoisie be able to defend part of the territory for free labor. This was not an idle question. The fact is that the position of landowners was unexpectedly strengthened by the "cotton boom", caused by a sharp increase and reduction in the cost of cotton production in the southern states. Already in 1819-1820 there were heated discussions in Congress, in which the best speakers of supporters and opponents of slavery participated. At the center of the struggle was the issue of admitting the new Tata of Missouri into the Union and the fate of slavery in Louisiana.

As a result, on September 9, 1820, the dispute was resolved by the "Missouri Compromise," which was proposed by the "master of compromise" G. Clay. Slave ownership was established in Louisiana, Missouri entered the Union as a slave state, and tiny England as a free state. The ratio of free and slave states and senators did not change. It was decided that henceforth slavery would be prohibited in the territory north of 36°30'. The "Missouri Compromise" changed little, but showed a lot: the slave and free states were no longer willing to concede to each other. For now, they saw a solution in decisive expansion and the seizure of new lands in the West. This helped postpone the conflict, but did not solve it. U.S. foreign policy and expansion corresponded to the domestic political course. The most important issues turned out to be European politics. On July 14, 1789, the bourgeois Revolution was

victorious in France. Progressive elements in the United States warmly welcomed her. Events and meetings were held in cities, and democratic clubs were created to support fellow revolutionaries. The official U.S. reaction, however, was different. The Washington government tried to establish cooperation with England (it included bankers, merchants and planters of the South). To please the British, the United States adopted a more than cool position towards revolutionary France. The French Ambassador E. Genet, who arrived in America, was greeted with distinctly coldness. He was received in a residence decorated with portraits of the imprisoned King Louis XVI and members of his family. The U.S. government refused to renew the 1778 treaty of alliance with France, and when E.C.Genet tried to appeal to American public opinion, ignoring the government, he was rudely expelled from the country. The Americans learned a lot from the Napoleonic wars that began in Europe. They traded with the inhabitants, receiving huge profits. But American interests soon clashed with British ones. London spoke to the former colony in an increasingly harsh language, essentially seeking to turn America into a market for any British goods. The British openly competed with the Americans in the markets of the Western Hemisphere, preventing their trade with Europe. The conflict became more and more aggravated every year. In the United States, there was a growing desire to solve economic and other difficulties at the expense of England, which was bogged down in the war with France. The government was planning to take Canada away from her, a long-standing goal of American expansionists. The British thought that by fighting in Europe they could teach the austere Americans a lesson and take revenge for past defeats. In 1812, both countries willingly went to war. The Americans invaded Canada but failed. British troops successfully advanced through American territory and even captured the capital, burning the White House and the Capitol - the building of Congress*. Then the patriotic spirit awoke in the Americans. The influx into the army increased. They managed to defend New York and Baltimore, and at the very end of 1814, General Jackson defeated the British near New Orleans. American privateers operated successfully at sea. In December 1814 both sides decided to end the war by agreeing to return to the status quo.

Appendix 2.4.

Civil War. Military Conflict between North and South. Reconstruction

The aggression of the slave owners met resistance from their numerous opponents, which gradually began to gain strength. Workers, farmers, intellectuals, clergy, and representatives of various sections of the bourgeoisie

joined its ranks. In Congress there were heated discussions, including fights and threats with weapons, on all issues related to slavery. Anti-slavery articles and pamphlets by famous writers G. Thoreau, R. Hildreth, H. Helper and others were distributed in the country. An unknown 38-year-old woman, a mother of six children, who lived for a long time on the border with slave-holding states and with her own eyes who saw what slavery was, wrote a book that shocked literally all of America and the rest of the world. In the USA alone, 300 thousand copies were immediately sold. This was the famous "Uncle Tom's Cabin". Later, many Americans claimed that this book by Harriet Beecher Stowe became the "fuse" for the war against slavery. The abolitionist movement grew, demanding the abolition of slavery.* At the end of the 50s, there were about 2 thousand abolitionist societies, uniting more than 250 thousand people. Abolitionist groups represented different movements. Most of them supported legal, non-violent methods of combating slavery, carried out explanatory propaganda work. Abolitionists, among whom there were many free blacks, organized an "underground railroad," a chain of shelters ("stations") along which special agents ("conductors"), risking their freedom (and even their lives), transported them to the North or Canada runaway slaves from the South. Among these brave and courageous people, the most famous was the black woman Harriet Tubman, who helped 300 slaves escape. A minority of abolitionists was extremists - they considered it necessary to wage an armed struggle against slavery. They took an active part in the "little civil war" that broke out in Kansas, and contributed to the fact that this state entered the Union free from slavery. Among the participants in the battles in Kansas, former farmer John Brown stood out. A deeply religious man, he considered slavery incompatible with Christianity and vowed to fight to the end for its abolition. Brown decided to raise a black uprising in Virginia and create a democratic republic in the mountains - a springboard for a future offensive against slave owners. With a detachment of 22 people (including 5 blacks), on October 16, 1859, he captured the arsenal in the town of Harpers Ferry. But, since contact with local slaves was not established, the detachment found itself isolated. Government troops under the command of R. Lee defeated Brown's "freedom army." Among the dead were his two sons. Brown himself, seriously wounded, ended up in prison. A southern court sentenced him to hang.

Before his execution, John handed over a note in which he prophetically wrote that the crimes of "this sinful country can only be washed away blood."

"At the end of the 50s, America faced an acute socio-political crisis. Its manifestation was the collapse of the previous two-party system. A new party system emerged, in which the Republican Party took the place of the Whigs. It

was created in 1854 and united various segments of the population, the common thing for which was opposition to slavery adenia. During the election campaign of 1860 The Democrats split into three factions, which largely contributed to the Republican victory.

Abraham Lincoln (popularly called Abe, we used to call him Abraham or Abraham) was elected the sixteenth President of the United States.

He was born in 1809 in Kentucky in a log cabin with one window, into the family of a small farmer. I tried the work of a carpenter, a woodcutter, a river rafter, and a clerk. Without even receiving primary education, he began self-education and achieved success, becoming a certified lawyer. Lincoln was involved in the political life of Illinois, where he lived and became congressman. He became famous in the country due to a dispute that took place in 1858 with a pro-slavery democrat, a wealthy planter and brave Colonel St. Douglas, who won, winning the seat of senator. Lincoln gained fame as an opponent of slavery, moderate but firm. Like many Republicans, the new president did not insist on ending slavery immediately, although he considered it unjust and harmful. But he also called abolitionism politically dangerous. Lincoln's main task saw the limitation of slavery to existing territory, which doomed it to a slow, inevitable, but, as many hoped, peaceful death. Lincoln was upset by the country's division over the issue of slavery. He said that the United States reminded him of a house divided into two parts. But such a house cannot stand, it will fall apart. The new president considered it his duty to strengthen the "home", that Union of States. This moderate position provided him with support of the majority of voters. In addition, they were attracted by his democracy, strong connection with ordinary people. People also liked his wisdom, calmness and resourcefulness, simple and figurative speech and inexhaustible humor, rich, sometimes rude, but not offensive.

Capable generals emerged: W. Sherman, J. Meade, J. Hooker and others. General Ulysses Grant, a career military man who showed his determination, tenacity and firmness in battles, became the commander-in-chief. Under his command, the northern army liberated the entire course of the "father of waters" Mississippi – and met with the troops that had captured New Orleans with the help of Admiral D. Faragut's fleet. The south was divided into two parts vertically. Soon, the army of General W. Sherman moved from Mississippi to the shores of the Atlantic Ocean. She advanced, thundering on along the way, the main communications and supply centers for the southerners. In December 1864, Sherman's troops, which included many blacks, captured the oceanfront city of Savannah. The South was once again cut in two. Its military power was undermined, the economic base destroyed. The population of the rebellious states

was starving, walked in rags, barefoot. Even in the houses of the rich they spun and they wove, made rough furniture and dishes.

The appearance of two Russian squads in New York and San Francisco was understood in the United States, and throughout the world, as a gesture friendly to the Lincoln government. Russia's position made it easier for the North to resolve a number of diplomatic issues. Later, the Tsarist government sold Alaska to the U.S. This was done because of the great need of the weakened autocracy for money and with the hope that America would not support England, which was hostile to Russia. the sale agreement was signed on March 30, 1867 on very favorable terms for the Americans: they received a huge territory of 577 thousand square meters. miles of this for 7.2 million dollars* in gold. In Russia, the deal went unnoticed. Later, many questions were raised and even a completely unfounded legend arose about the "temporary" sale of Alaska. But they sold it forever. The leadership of the Confederacy, seeing that its internal and international situation had deteriorated sharply, decided on an adventure and sent General R. Lee's army to Pennsylvania and Maryland. Southern troops were breaking away from old supply bases in the hope of dubious support from secret supporters in the North. They received no support, but met with an army of northerners. July 1, 1863 a bloody battle took place at Gettysburg. Both sides fought desperately, brutally, suffering huge losses. But still, the southerners lost the battle and began to retreat. In April 1865, the armies of Grant and Sherman took the capital of the Confederacy after a long and bloody siege. The first to march through the streets of empty, destroyed, burning Richmond was a black regiment. Retreating, General Lee's troops tried to escape into the mountains of Virginia, but were captured by the northerners near the village of Appomattox. There, in an empty courthouse, on April 9, almost exactly four years after the war began, Lee surrendered to Grant. The war was over. A month earlier, on March 4, Lincoln assumed the presidency for the second time. He prevailed in the elections of 1864 over the Democratic candidate, his former commander in chief, J. McClellan, who spoke under the slogan: "Peace at any cost!". Lincoln led a campaign under the motto: "War to victory!" And he won - both in the elections and in the war. But I didn't have time to see the fruits of victory. On April 14, 1865, at the Washington Theater, the ardent supporter of slave owners, actor Booth, entered the presidential box, which, for some reason, was not guarded, and shot Lincoln in the back of the head. The criminal fled. After a long search, he was discovered, but instead of being captured, he was shot with suspicious haste. Booth took the secret of the immersion with him to the grave. And there are still serious suspicions that his shot is just the result of a conspiracy, the real

initiators of which have not been identified to this day. Lincoln died on the morning of April 15. The great statesman of America died, having completed his main task - the liberation of slaves. The American poet Walt Whitman, a contemporary of Lincoln and a participant in the war, figuratively expressed the thoughts of millions of Americans in the song 'Oh, Captain, My Captain!', dedicated to the president. It talks about a captain who, although he died, brought his combat frigate to the harbor." * For four years the country was in the flames of a special kind of war - civil, general, and merciless; Americans fought with Americans. The nation was split into two parts, not always defined by geography. The war divided families, relatives, and friends. Three troops of President Lincoln's wife died for the Confederacy. Relatives of J. Davis fought on the side of the northerners. The nature of the war led to unprecedentedly high losses: 600 thousand killed and 1 million wounded and maimed. The war brought destruction and the severance of old trade and other ties. The south was devastated, production and transport were undermined, and it came to the revival of subsistence farming. On the contrary, the North, although it suffered great human losses, developed its economy. Steel and iron production, coal and ore mining increased. Ordinary people got jobs and good earnings. Agriculture reached such productivity that it was able to export grain abroad. Farmers became rich in the war, although their wallets were stuffed with fat, rapidly depreciating dollars. Large financiers, industrialists, traders, and speculators grabbed the biggest spoils. They made millions from the remains of weapons, ammunition, and food, often spoiled and unfit for consumption. The first millionaires appeared - the Astors, the Underbilts, Cook and others. The war ended, but the revolutionary transformations continued. Now their main content was the return of their former rebellious states to the Union on certain conditions. This long and complex process was called Reconstruction and lasted from 1865 to 1877. It became an inevitable stage of the Second American Revolution.

Appendix 3.1.
Political system in the United States

The election of public officials and the balance of power between the three branches of government (legislative, executive, and judicial) carry out democracy in the United States. This system, which makes each branch accountable to the others, restricts the authority of any one branch of the government.

According to the Constitution of the United States of America, the principle of separation of powers is decisive in the country. It divides the

federal government into legislative, executive, and judicial branches, each of which operates independently of each other.

In the U.S. political system, the highest legislative body is the Congress, consisting of two chambers. The lower one is the House of Representatives, the upper one is the United States Senate, The legislative branch, or Congress (comprised of the House of Representatives and the Senate), writes, amends, and passes bills, which the President, as head of the executive branch, must then sign into law.

The executive branch through the President may veto any bill. If the President does veto a bill, the legislative branch may overturn this action with a two-thirds majority in both legislative houses.

The judicial branch, or Supreme Court, may overturn any law passed by the legislature and signed by the President.

The people elect the executive and legislative branches, while the executive branch appoints the members of the judicial branch, subject to approval by the legislature.

The most prominent election in the United States is that of President. While many people mistakenly believe that the popular vote or the Congress directly elects the President, the Electoral College (whose vote is dictated by the popular vote) officially elects the President. To maintain a balance of power, states elect the legislature separately. Each state elects two representatives to the Senate for six years; only a portion of the Senate seats come up for election every two years. States have a varying number of congressional seats based on population. Thus, for example, California elects more representatives than other Western states because it has a higher population. Population is constitutionally determined through a ten-year national census.

The President appoints the U.S. Supreme Court (the nine-member judicial branch), but both branches of the legislature must approve the President's choices. This appointment is for life to remove the justice system from short-term political influence.

In accordance with the Constitution adopted in 1787, most of the powers of government were transferred to the federal government of the United States. At the same time, a significant share of government powers is the responsibility of each individual state.

The highest executive body in the country is the President of the United States. He is not only the head of state, but also the commander-in-chief of its armed forces. There is also the post of vice president, who is the second person in the country after the president. Previously, representatives of competing parties became president and vice president in the United States, which made it

possible to reconcile the ambitions of the warring parties. Today, both top officials in the United States are elected from the same party.

The highest judicial authority in the United States is the Supreme Court. It consists of 9 judges, one of them is elected chairman. Typically, the U.S. Supreme Court acts as an appellate court, but in some cases (for example, when considering cases involving diplomats), it acts as a trial court.

Appendix 3.2.
U.S. Senate – its functions and responsibilities

The Senate is the upper house of the U.S. Congress. It has 100 members, two from each of the 50 states. The term of service of each elected senator is 6 years. One third of the senators are re-elected every two years. A citizen who has reached the age of 30 and has lived in the state that is his constituency for at least the last 9 years can apply for a seat in the U.S. Senate.

Decisions are made in the Senate by voting. Each senator has one vote, the decision is considered made when a simple majority of these votes is obtained. The President of the U.S. Senate is the Vice President of the country, but his participation in voting is limited only to those cases when the votes of senators are equally divided. There are currently 57 Democratic representatives, 41 Republican representatives, and 2 senators in the United States Senate, serving independently from the country's two major parties. However, these two independent members of the U.S. Senate speak out in support of the Democratic Party, which has a majority.

The importance of the Senate in the functioning of the government mechanism of the United States of America must be assessed taking into account several aspects. Firstly, with the help of the Senate such an important circumstance is achieved as equal representation of each of the subjects of the federation in the supreme bodies of power. Each state has two senators who have equal weight when voting for certain decisions. This is of serious importance for small states, since their interests in the lower house of parliament, whose members are recruited according to the number of inhabitants in a particular territory, are negligible.

Secondly, the U.S. Senate plays a great role in government decision-making because its members are older than those who work in the House of Representatives, they are elected for a longer term and are renewed by a third every two years. This allows the upper house of the Parliament of the United States of America to act as a kind of brake in the adoption of decisions put

forward by the House of Representatives, which is formed on more democratic principles and has a significant populist bent. In this case, senators are more focused on the government of the country and can conduct a better examination of all bills adopted.

It is noteworthy that until 1913, senators were elected not by U.S. citizens, but by members of specially formed legislative assemblies of each state. However, after the adoption of the 17th Amendment to the Constitution, the U.S. Senate began to be formed through direct elections.

Appendix 3.3.
U.S. House of Representatives

The lower house of the U.S. Congress is the House of Representatives. Each state is represented in proportion to the size of the population living on its territory. The number of seats in the House remains unchanged and amounts to 435 seats, although by decision of Congress the number of state representatives in this body of the U.S. government can be adjusted. Each state representative serves a two-year term and can be re-elected an unlimited number of times. The U.S. House of Representatives is headed by a Speaker, who is elected directly by the members of the House.

The procedure for convening and the powers of the Congress of the United States of America are established in accordance with the first article of the Constitution of the country. However, in the text of this article there is no mention of the division of Congress into two chambers. In fact, the main function of the House of Representatives is to consider and adopt laws of a federal nature, that is, those that are accepted as guidelines for action in the territory of any state. Bills passed by the House of Representatives are discussed in the Senate, signed by the President of the United States, and only after that become laws.

Candidates for membership in the House of Representatives must be over 25 years of age, be citizens of the United States of America, and have lived for at least the last seven years in the state from which they are to be elected. Each member of the House may use the title "The Honorable," or "The Hon." for short, before his or her name. Members of the House of Representatives receive their positions through the direct vote of citizens. Thus, each of the 435 state representatives represents their own constituency. The proportions of distribution of seats in the House between individual states are reviewed in accordance with the prescribed procedure once every 10 years. The basis for

revision is the number of residents of the state. With any changes in population, the number of members of the lower house of parliament representing the residents of a particular state may decrease or increase, but the total number of seats in the House of Representatives will remain unchanged.

The U.S. House of Representatives is being formed on more democratic principles than the upper house of Congress, that is, the Senate. Members of the lower house of the U.S. Parliament are usually called congressmen, and they always interact closely with their constituents. It is congressmen who carry out the bulk of legislative activity in the government.

The U.S. House of Representatives has many committees that deal with issues that are most important to the country and its citizens. Among other things, there are committees on agriculture, military affairs, education and labor, energy and trade, natural resources, small business, housing administration, and so on.

Appendix 3.4.
Legislative assemblies in the United States

In the United States of America, the management of the state machine is decentralized, so each state has its own authorities. The legislative function in all 50 states is carried out by their own legislative assemblies, which are also called legislatures.

Because Americans carefully preserve their historical traditions, legislative assemblies in different states have different official names. In twenty-four states, this legislative body is called the "state legislature." In nineteen states it is called the General Assembly. There are also such isolated names as the Legislative Assembly and the General Council.

Legislative assemblies have full legislative power in each state. The laws of each state lay down the structure of this legislative body, the procedure for electing its members, their term of office, the very powers of this body and the procedures for their implementation. In many respects, in terms of structure and methods of carrying out activities, the U.S. legislative assemblies copy the Congress. In all states except Nebraska, they are formed from two traditional chambers: the Senate and the House of Representatives.

The size of each state legislature varies significantly. It may include several dozen or several hundred members. Moreover, the number of legislators does not depend either on the size of the state or on the size of the population living in it. The terms of office of representatives of the legislative assembly also differ. They usually last two or four years. U.S. legislative sessions are

held at different intervals. In some states they are carried out annually, in others once every two years. These sessions are much shorter than those held in the U.S. Congress. State legislative assemblies resolve the backlog of issues within 1-2 months of work.

Appendix 3.5.
Minority groups in the U.S. Congress

Representation from ethnic minority groups has continued to increase in the U.S. Congress. The 118th Congress (from 2022 midterm election) is the most racially and ethnically diverse in the history of the country with 23% from an ethnic minority background. The majority of these are members of the Democratic Party (83%).

In 2023, of 100 Senators there were:

88 white-only senators although white Americans make up only 56% of the population

6 Hispanic senators although Hispanic Americans make up only 19.1% of the population

2 Asian senators although Asian Americans make up only 6.3% of the population

1 American Indian and Alaska Native make up 0.2% of the population.

In 2023, in the House of Representatives (435 members), there were:

313 white American-only congressmen/women (72% of all representatives) although white Americans make up only 56% of the population

53 black American congressmen/women (12.1%) although Black Americans make up 13.6% of the population

46 Hispanic American congressmen/women (10.5%) although Hispanic Americans make up 19.1% of the population

14 Asian American congressmen/women (3.2%) although Asian Americans make up 6.3% of the population.

There are many people from ethnic minority groups who have been elected at state and local level. However, minority groups remain, overall, under-represented at these levels.

Examples of locally minority group elected officials include:

Governors such as West Moore the black American governor of Maryland and only the third black American elected as a governor in U.S. history city mayors including Randall Wood-fin in Birmingham, Alabama and Karen Bass in Los Angeles, California.

Appendix 3.6.
List of all U.S. presidents

N	**President**	**Years of life**	**Duration of government**	**Days in power**	**Party**
1	George Washington	1732-1799	April 30, 1789 - March 4, 1797	2865	Non-party
2	John Adams	1735-1826	March 4, 1797 - March 4, 1801	2460	Federalist
3	Thomas Jefferson	1743 - 1826	March 4, 1801- March 4, 1809	2922	Democrat-Republican
4	James Madison	1751-1836	March 4, 1809-March 4, 1817	2922	Democrat-Republican
5	James Monroe	1758-1831	March 4, 1817-March 4, 1825	2922	Democrat-Republican
6	John Quincy Adams	1767-1848	March 4, 1825-March 4, 1829	1461	Democrat-Republican
7	Andrew Jackson	1767-1845	March 4, 1829-March 4, 1837	2922	Democrats
8	Martin Van Buren	1782-1862	March 4, 1837-March 4, 1841	1461	Democrats
9	William Henry Harrison	1773-1841	March 4, 1841- 4 April 1841	31	Whig
10	John Tyler	1790-1862	April 4, 1841-4 March 1845	1430	Whig
11	James Knox Regiment	1795-1849	March 4, 1845-March 4, 1849	1461	Democrats
12	Zachary Taylor	1784-1850	March 4, 1849-9 July 1850	492	Whig
13	Millard Fillmore	1800-1874	July 9, 1850-4 March 1853	969	Whig
14	Franklin Pierce	1804-1869	March 4, 1853-March 4, 1857	1,461	Democrats
15	James Buchanan	1791-1868	March 4, 1857-March 4, 1861	1,461	Democrats
16	Abraham Lincoln	1809-1865	March 4, 1861-April 15, 1865	1503	Republicans
17	Andrew Johnson	1808-1875	April 15, 1865-March 4, 1869	1419	Democrats

18	Ulysses Simpson Grant	1822-1885	March 4, 1869-March 4, 1877	2922	Republicans
19	Rutherford Birchard Hayes	1822-1893	March 4, 1877-March 4, 1881	1461	Republicans
20	James Abram Garfield	1831-1881	March 4, 1881-September 19, 1881	199	Republicans
21	Chester Alan Arthur	1830-1886	September 19, 1881-March 4, 1885	1262	Republicans
22	Stephen Grover Cleveland	1837-1908	March 4, 1885-March 4, 1889	1461	Democrats
23	Benjamin Harrison	1833-1901	March 4, 1889-March 4, 1893	1461	Democrats
24	Stephen Grover Cleveland	1837-1908	March 4, 1893-March 4, 1897	1461	Democrats
25	William McKinley	1843-1901	March 4, 1897-September 14, 1901	1654	Republicans
26	Theodore Roosevelt	1858-1919	September 14, 1901-March 4, 1909	2728	Republicans
27	William Howard Taft	1857-1930	March 4, 1909-March 4, 1913	1461	Republicans
28	Thomas Woodrow Wilson	1856-1924	March 4, 1913-March 4, 1921	2922	Democrats
29	Warren Harding	1865-1923	March 4, 1921-August 2, 1923	881	Republicans
30	Calvin Coolidge	1872-1933	August 2, 1923-March 4, 1929	2041	Republicans
31	Herbert Clark Hoover	1874-1964	March 4, 1929-March 4, 1933	1461	Republicans
32	Franklin Delano Roosevelt	1882-1945	March 4, 1933-April 12, 1945	4422	Democrats
33	Harry Truman	1884-1972	April 12, 1945-January 20, 1953	2840	Democrats
34	Dwight David Eisenhower	1890-1969	January 20, 1953-January 20, 1961	2922	Republicans
35	John Fitzgerald Kennedy	1917-1963	January 20, 1961-November 22, 1963	1036	Democrats
36	Lyndon Johnson	1908-1973	November 22, 1963-January 20, 1969	1886	Democrats
37	Richard Milhouse Nixon	1913-1994	January 20, 1969-August 9, 1974	2027	Republicans

38	Gerald Rudolph Ford	1913-2006	August 9, 1974-January 20, 1977	895	Republicans
39	James (Jimmy) Earl Carter	1924-alive	January 20, 1977-January 20, 1981	1461	Democrats
40	Ronald Wilson Reagan	1911-2004	January 20, 1981-January 20, 1989	2922	Republicans
41	George Herbert Walker Bush	1924-2018	January 20, 1989-January 20, 1993	1461	Republicans
42	William (Bill) Jefferson Clinton	1946-alive	January 20, 1993-January 20, 2001	2922	Democrats
43	George W. Bush	1946-alive	January 20, 2001-January 20, 2009	2922	Republicans
44	Barack Hussein Obama	1961-alive	January 20, 2009- January 20, 2017	2922	Democrats
45	Donald John Trump	1946-alive	January 20, 2017- January 20, 2021	1461	Republicans
46	Joseph Robinette Biden	1942-alive	January 20, 2021- January 20, 2025	1461	Democrats
47	Donald John Trump	1946-alive	January 20, 2025- active		Republicans

Appendix 3.7.
Vice President of the United States – and his functions

The Vice President of the United States is the second most important official in the overall structure of the country's executive branch. According to the constitution, its main function is to replace the President of the United States in the event of his death, resignation or removal from office. Formally, the Vice President of the United States is the head of the upper house of the country's Congress (Senate). For this reason, some experts on the government of the United States of America have disputes as to whether this post belongs to the executive or legislative branch.

The election of the U.S. Vice President takes place in parallel with the presidential elections. Each candidate for the post of President of the United States goes to the polls together with the person who will hold the vice-presidential position under him. The vice president is chosen from the same political party as the head of state himself. However, according to the constitution, the second person in the country must be chosen from another state.

A person elected to the post of Vice President of the United States is subject to the same requirements as those applying for the presidency. He must

be over 35 years of age, born in the United States, and have resided in this country for at least 14 years. While the number of presidential terms in the United States is limited to two, the vice president can be elected an unlimited number of times.

Previously, in the United States, the posts of president and vice president were held by people from opposing political parties. Such a system existed in order to satisfy the ambitions of each of the parties to the political process, but it has now been abolished, and the two first persons of the state must belong to the same party. In the history of the United States, quite often incumbent presidents were replaced in their positions by vice presidents, both before the first completed their statutory term as a result of death or illness, and at the next election.

According to his formal functions, the Vice President of the United States is the head of the Senate. However, in fact, its head is the chairman of the Senate, and the vice president only has the casting vote in the event that the votes of the senators are divided in half. The President of the United States, at his discretion, can delegate to the Vice President a number of public duties, which he will carry out on behalf of the immediate head of state.

The Vice President of the United States takes office on the same day as the President, namely January 20 of the year following the election year. The vice president takes an oath of office, but it is not specified in the constitution.

Appendix 3.8.
U.S. State Department

The U.S. State Department is part of the executive branch of the United States of America and is one of the country's 15 executive departments. It is headed by the U.S. Secretary of State, whose position is similar to that of the Minister of Foreign Affairs in other countries. Accordingly, the U.S. State Department, by analogy with the political structure of most countries, is the Ministry of Foreign Affairs.

Legally, the U.S. State Department is considered an advisory body, since according to the country's constitution, the implementation of all foreign policy is entrusted to the president. In fact, the U.S. State Department implements in practice the course of foreign policy that is developed by the President and Congress. In addition, the State Department carries out certain internal political functions, for example, publishing laws.

The head of the U.S. State Department is considered the fourth person in the state. Each U.S. president has his own secretary of state, who changes after

one presidential term. The candidate for the post of Secretary of State is nominated by the President of the country and confirmed by the Senate.

The U.S. State Department has several divisions, including the Bureau of Democracy, Human Rights and Labor. This bureau is known for the fact that it annually publishes its report on the support that the United States provides to different countries of the world in respecting human rights and democratic norms. This report is submitted to the U.S. Congress and contains information on assessing the level of democracy in different countries of the world.

The U.S. State Department also houses the Foreign Service Institute, which trains diplomatic staff. This institute is engaged in the preparation and teaching of foreign language courses for employees of diplomatic missions. The Director of the U.S. Foreign Service Institute is considered by his position to be the Assistant Secretary of State of the United States. The director of this division of the State Department is appointed directly by the Secretary of State of the United States.

Appendix 3.9.
U.S. Democratic Party

One of the two largest parties in the United States is the Democratic Party. At the same time, it is also considered one of the oldest political parties in the entire world history.

The founders of the U.S. Democratic Party are several major politicians, including Thomas Jefferson (3rd U.S. President), Andrew Jackson (7th U.S. President) and Martin Van Buren (8th U.S. President). The founding date of this party is considered to be 1828.

In the time period between 1828 and 1860, U.S. Democrats occupied leading positions in the political life of the country, in rare cases losing power and transferring it to the Whigs. The Whig Party was at that time the second-largest political force in the country after the Democrats, but it was dissolved in 1856. Among the original talking points of the Democratic Party was the preservation of slavery. This reflected the interests of the southern states of the United States, where the Democrats drew their electoral strength. They were voted for by planters, slave owners, villagers, Catholics and various influential clans. In 1861-1865, the Civil War took place in the United States between the North and the South, that is, opponents of slavery and its supporters. The South lost the war, slavery was abolished, and the U.S. Democratic Party was in decline for almost 40 years after the defeat. Until 1912, the ruling party in the country was the Republican Party.

In the 20th century, the Democratic Party regained its former strength and gave America several outstanding presidents. These included Woodrow Wilson, Franklin Roosevelt and John Kennedy. At the turn of the millennium, Democrats retreated slightly into the background, giving Republicans more seats in Congress and state legislatures.

At the end of the 20th century, the U.S. Democratic and Republican parties practically changed their electorates. Democrats have long enjoyed the support of the poor population of the southern states, and also openly and covertly advocated inequality based on race. However, the 36th U.S. President, Democrat Lindsey Johnson (who served as President from 1963 to 1969), outlawed any signs of segregation. Today, the Democratic Party's core constituency resides in large cities and populous coastal states with well-developed economies.

The Democratic Party or the Democrats are, in general, more liberal on social issues such as rights for minorities, abortion and assistance for the poor. Economically, Democrats are more likely to believe in a bigger role for government in the economy, for example in providing health insurance.

The trade unions in America are a strong base of support for the Democrats, who are more likely to support workers' rights and issues such as the national minimum wage.

States with large cities like New York tend to have more Democratic Party supporters, as do the New England states. Democrat support is also very strong in the West of the U.S. in states such as California, Oregon and Washington State.

Appendix 3.10.
U.S. Republican Party

One of the two main political forces in the United States is the Republican Party. It has a second name – Grand Old Party, which translates as Great Old Party.

The Republican Party or the Republicans is the USA's oldest political party and is economically conservative. Traditionally it stands for business, small government and low taxation.

The Republican Party has a strong support base among White Christian voters, many of whom disagree with liberal causes such as abortion rights and same-sex marriage. Many Republican Party voters are found in the central states of the US/Mid-west (e.g. Iowa, Montana, or Nebraska) and the South of the U.S. in states such as Texas, Mississippi, or Louisiana.

After the 2022 mid-term U.S. elections, the Republican Party took control of the House of Representatives with 222 congressmen and women to the Democratic Party's 213 congressmen and women.

The Republican Party of the United States was organized as opponents of the slave system that existed in the country. The date of creation of the party is considered to be 1854. Industrialists from the northern states of the country united under its banner. As a result, an impressive counterweight was created to the then elite Democratic Party, which monopolized the country after the dissolution of the Whig Party. The Republican Party of the United States, immediately after its creation, came out with demands to prohibit the spread of the slave system in Western lands. At the same time, the Republicans wanted to distribute land free of charge to everyone. These territories were formally considered free, but in fact they were inhabited by Indian tribes, whose opinion was of no interest to anyone. In addition, U.S. Republicans called for the introduction of high duties on the import of industrial goods from European countries.

This radical divergence in political positions led to the Civil War, in which the North defeated the South, and, starting in the mid-1860s, the Republicans had a complete monopoly on power in the country for almost 20 years. Slavery was abolished, and the United States entered a period of powerful economic development. At the beginning of the 20th century, the Democratic Party again emerged as a strong competitor to the Republicans. Many of the latter's positions were soon subject to revision; for example, the movement for the rights of the black population in the United States that developed in the 1940s-60s was greeted coolly by the Republican Party.

The U.S. Republican Party experienced a real defeat after Democrat Franklin Roosevelt, who led the country for 12 years, from 1933 to 1945, became president. The long series of defeats was broken in 1953 by Republican Dwight Eisenhower, who won the presidential election and became one of the ideologists of the Cold War. However, the Republican Party really gained strength in the late 1970s, when former Hollywood actor Ronald Reagan became president. He carried out a significant renewal of the party and dropped ultra-conservative positions.

According to statistics, Republicans are supported by 55% of the U.S. population. Among the main positions of the Republican Party, it is necessary to highlight calls for lower taxes, the organization of free trade and the unimpeded carrying of firearms. Republicans call for restrictions on illegal immigration and expulsions of undocumented immigrants, they oppose attempts to increase the minimum wage, fight environmental protection measures that conflict with the interests of firms and corporations, support economic protectionism and prevent the formation of unions in private companies. Members of the Republican Party vote to strengthen the country's security and increase military spending, they reject pacifism and fight international terrorism. Republicans support the theory

of creationism, according to which everything living and nonliving on the planet is created by God, they fight the principle of separation of state and church.

Today, the main electorate of the U.S. Republican Party is people of retirement age, white men, religious Americans and residents of rural areas.

Appendix 3.11.
Participation and representation of political system among minority groups

Minority groups are becoming more important in U.S. politics. In most countries, the poorest people are less likely to participate in politics. In the US, most ethnic minority groups, who are generally poorer than the white majority, are also, historically, less likely to take part in politics, including using their vote. Whites, on the other hand, are more likely to vote, as well as stand as a candidate, join a political party or campaign in local, state, or national elections.

Barack Obama's successful Presidential election campaigns in 2008 and 2012 were different to previous U.S. elections as they energized black American voters, with many people actively campaigning as well as voting. Hundreds of thousands of volunteers donated money, organized transportation to voting booths, took part in telephone messages, or simply posted the motivational message "Yes, We Can", on social media. 65% of black Americans voted in the 2008 Presidential election, the highest figure ever.

In the presidential election of 2016, voting turnout by racial group was similar to the years before Obama with white Americans turning out to vote in the highest percentage numbers. The black American vote in the same year, without Obama to vote for as President this time, fell by seven percentage points from 2012. However black and Hispanic American voters turning out in 2016, plus a higher turnout from white American voters who are more likely to vote Republican, this helped Republican Donald Trump to win.

In the future, with minorities becoming a bigger percentage of the U.S. population and voting in greater numbers, minority groups will become more important in deciding which candidate and parties win elections.

Appendix 4.1.
What is the American dream?

The expression "American Dream" was first formulated in the 1930s years James Adams, American historian. He described the process like this: "The American Dream is the dream of a country in which life should be better,

richer and fuller for everyone, with opportunities for everyone according to their abilities and achievements." These ideals were also written in American "Declaration of Independence" (1776), which guaranteed the rights to life and liberty and the pursuit of happiness for every American citizen. However, over time the concept the American dream has come to mean many different things to people. Even in these days this idea means different things at the same time. Although it is impossible to properly define the American Dream, it is possible to determine what it means to different people. Of course, the simplest definition The American Dream is the definition given above. Besides, it seems to me that all other definitions of the American dream are based on this simple definition. For U.S. citizens, the American dream often means being able to go to school, get a higher education, get a job where you earn enough, to support a family, have children and, finally, receive a pension. For some people The American dream means a professional career and access to more high social classes. For other people, the American dream is that such lofty goals as fame and fame will be achieved. In the time of the Founding Fathers, the American Dream consisted of freedom to choose one's religion and freedom from unfair taxes. In fact, for many people who immigrate to America to escape oppression in their homeland, the American Dream probably still means freedom from persecution, just as it did so many years ago.

Along with the concept of the American dream, it is worth talking about its possibilities and achievements. The American Dream is beginning to seem more and more unattainable for Americans. This may be because many cannot afford themselves to attend university and without this they cannot find a job without education. This means they live in poverty, but through no fault of their own. In fact, one of the disadvantages concepts of the American dream is that this idea has long been saying that you can achieve anything in America through hard work. However this is not always right. From this faith we get such phrases as "make your own way", "do it yourself "pull oneself up by bootstraps." Unfortunately for people, if they didn't have opportunity to obtain higher education, it is almost impossible. Is the American dream really achievable, maybe not the most important part of this idea? In fact, it always depends on each person and their circumstances. In connection with this, I argue that the reason that the American dream is so desirable is that it promises all the possibilities one could desire. It is a promise that America is a land of freedom, opportunity and hope that forces people to continue working towards their own version of American dreams and create it for you. Although the American Dream may not be realized for everyone, its importance stems from the fact that it creates ideals for people to which they can pursuit; ideals that

they could achieve through a lot of hard work, and even flying across the ocean is also a serious, difficult matter.

The concept of the American dream is just the idea of supporting people to follow their dreams that they can realize in America, and also the idea of the American dream indicates the place where this dream can come true. In closing, I would like to once again emphasize the words of the Founding Fathers, from which each and every American dream is created – life, liberty and pursuit of happiness.

When a foreigner thinks about is the "American Dream", he probably thinks about some way of American lifestyle. This image consists of material wealth, success and freedom. However, in this image has no depth. This is a superficial understanding of the American dream, and when we talk about it, we immediately enter the realm of national stereotypes and norms. Everyone knows that the "American Dream" is the public image of personal success. The interpretation of the American dream depends on the individual, but the concept of success is in everyone. The dream shows us a picture that includes a big house, a handsome spouse or a beautiful wife, two cars and two children. At least the American dream – this is life without material difficulties, a life in which money plays a major role. America is the "birthplace of freedom," but for us freedom requires a good salary. Necessary make good money to be free. Without money a person doesn't have many opportunities in your life. He becomes a victim of economic circumstances. Thus, money buys freedom. In America, individualism is the most important thing, but as in any society, we also live according to many social norms. Our individualism is not in contradictions with these norms. On the contrary, they coincide. Social norms build model for life. You could say they are part of cultural genetics. Norms advise a person on how to build his life, how to think, how to work, how to look; we tend not to recognize the norms that we keep within ourselves, and mistakenly believe that we choose your own unique path. I talk about norms because Americans can live without the American dream, but it is impossible for them to live without the other norms of American society. Of course, one of the most powerful norms in the United States is the norm for success. For example, an American man should to be successful, or he is not considered a "real man". The worst thing in America is...be a loser. They respect winners and fear mediocrity. The result of it is because American culture is a culture of comparison. Almost all compare each other to each other. A common theme in American literature is envy of to another who has more than me. Every American wants his own fame, let him good or bad.

Americans are said to have the freest society in the world. We, Americans are free to lead our lives as we choose. However, one can doubt that we choose

our lives independently, or that our social norms only lead us a little. Americans are no different from others in that most of us trying to live life like our friends, or neighbors, or family, or social role models. The opposite of the American dream is failure, the "American nightmare". America is the richest country in the world, but the quality of life is not the best. This wealth helps some, but others are severely lacking in basic necessities. Many work without earning good money. They work without vacations, without insurance, without support and without respect. There are many examples of inequality in the US, but here's only one: America is the only country in the West that does not have a state help for mothers. I believe the reason for this is that the American Dream - libertarian dream. She requires everyone to work. Everyone should be "self-made cowboys." The dream is neither about community nor about friendship. She only refers to self-interest. Many people consider the American Dream to be democratic. They think this way because "any person can achieve great success." This is delusion and truth. On the one hand, not "any person" can achieve success, but, on the other hand, there are still many opportunities in the USA that a person can use. What message does the American dream give to a foreigner who immigrates to America? If a foreigner wants to be successful, he has to rely on himself and not on others. It is important that he understands that there is no reliable social support here. You could say that he must behave like a polite 21st century pirate if he wants to achieve real success.

Many argue about the meaning of American dreams, but like the very existence of man, the meaning depends on the person himself, which tries to define this concept. During history, the idea of the American dream has changed a lot times, but, in my opinion, its essence remains the same. So, what is historically the American dream for Americans? After American Revolution in the 18th century, Americans had to create a model of "new Americans." They decided that in order for a person to achieve a goal, a person needs a lot work. Everyone had the freedom to pursue their goal through personal dedication to it goals. Since goal and dream are in some sense synonymous, therefore the American dream is just a person's goal, and nothing more. After World War II, the meaning of the American dream changed. The goal reached some social standard. The generation that was born at that time was called "baby boomers" because the population of the United States increased dramatically after the soldiers returned from the war. During that period, the United States was prospering economically, money seemed to be everywhere. To show who was the most successful person, people had to have material things and prestigious social characteristics. Children who grew up in this period, they realized that in order to become successful, they had to get a

certificate or diploma about education, then find a good job, then buy a house, cars and start children (if one may say so, the “Holocene period of American society”). When a person follows these stages, follows this path, he can achieve success, and that’s all. They know that when a person is successful, he is always happy. Why is the American Dream important to Americans?. The U.S. population needs to feel or believe that they are free to choose any future they want and believe that if they work hard they can achieve your dream. This action gives people meaning in life. For foreigners, the American dream sometimes means something more. I'm deep I am convinced that nostalgia and fantasy are dangerous for the psyche, and the grass is always greener on the other side. Many foreigners dream of living in America, and yes, of course, in relation to quality of life, life in the USA is not as difficult as in other countries, but fantasies are often live in the realm of dreams. The idea of the American dream is usually the image what a person can achieve in the "land of opportunity" and the American Dream seems like a dream without a ceiling. Usually in his dreams, when a person comes to America, he knows how to work hard, get money, buy a house and live freely. Unfortunately, the situation does not happen like this, except, perhaps, for those who are really works a lot, and those who are simply lucky in life. Luck plays a huge role in business success, and no one can explain this role. In short, many foreigners fall in love with the idea of the American dream, but when they come to America they often notice that the dream they believed in turns out to be just a dream and nothing more.

Appendix 4.2.
Values

America is one of the most culturally diverse countries, with residents representing nearly every region in the world. America is home to people from all around the world, so when you live in the USA, you’ll likely encounter unique cultures, traditions, arts, sports, and more. Over time, these many multicultural traditions have blended and adapted to become the face of culture in the USA.

Described as a “melting pot” of cultures, the U.S. is the third-largest country in the world, with residents representing different ethnic groups such as African Americans, Asian Americans, Indigenous Americans, and Latin Americans. As a result, U.S. culture may at once sound both familiar and different, whether its shared values, food portions, fashion, and so on.

Every country has its own set of values and principles, and this is also true for America. Speaking generally, people in the USA align with the values stated in our Declaration of Independence: that all are created equal, with

unalienable rights of life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. Let's take a closer look at what this means from a cultural values perspective.

Independence: From early years, Americans are taught to be self-confident and independent. The significance of a person being able to define their own identity and life through their own preferences, capacities, and efforts is heavily estimated in American culture and education. Americans appreciate taking care of themselves and having the freedom to mold their own definition of being happy. If one focuses on freedom it does not mean you are alone, however, as there are many communities, advisors, and support services in the U.S. you can rely on in times of need.

Equality: American community is based on the idea that "all men are created equal", while there are quite many differences like economic, social, and cultural variety throughout the U.S. In theory, everyone should have an equal chance for success. Because of this emphasis, Americans tend to underestimate social status in everyday activities, and only acknowledge these varieties in minor ways. On the other hand, Americans may feel offended if they feel they are not being treated equally.

For Americans, equality means all are born equal to each other and no one is superior to the other. U.S. universities estimate equality highly, and will often enclose statements demanding equal rights in their reports, and codes of conduct of students and staff. Additionally, anti-discrimination policies are taken seriously and enforced for all spheres.

Individualism: Individuality is highly valued in American culture. American people often identify themselves as separate ones before being defined for their family, a group, or the nation. American children are often taught that relying on oneself is significant to success in adult life. Being interested in developing one's abilities is thought to be beneficial for the majority.

Similar to estimating independence, culture in America puts a great importance on individualism. Individualism usually means being self-sufficient, with environment and assistance from government in different fields. This means people independent to pursue their goals, often on their own conditions, within the contours of U.S. laws.

Americans support the ideals of independence and order in high regard, and individualism is a key factor – everyone in the U.S. is close to their personal beliefs. The capacity to express your personal views and preferences is supported to be considered part of this freedom.

Materialism: America comprises the largest economical system, built off the orders of capitalism. As a result, culture in the USA often represents a strong importance on materialism.

Due to America's strong economical situation and capitalist economy, people can sometimes be supported to assess their wealth based on personal possessions and compare material possessions with others. This materialism plays an important role in paraphrasing inequities in America, but can be dependable on many factors such as your personal community, or the state where you reside.

Diversity: With its many diverse societies, America gives you an opportunity to experiment and connect with different cultures, whether you're visiting ethnic restaurants, attending different events celebrating particular types of music or artists, assisting on a group presentation with fellow students from different backgrounds, and much more.

Since the U.S. prefer to honor its multicultural diversity, one can watch historical landmarks, locations and monuments that have the story of many of the minorities in the US. American culture encloses examples of these communities including African Americans, Asian Americans, Hispanics, Latin Americans, Native Americans, and more.

Informality: Halfly, due to their sense of equality, Americans prefer to be very informal. Dress, especially in an educational sphere, can be very casual. This character also leads to friendliness. Americans are easy at saying hello to friends and casual acquaintances. Americans probably ask "How's it going?" as a way of greeting. While this informality can be confusing if you are not familiar to it, Americans consider it to be a warm and friendly activity.

Directness: Americans consider that being direct is the best way to get into communication, and often, it is the main way to be "heard". To people from various cultures, this can seem aggressive or cruel. The significance of individuality in U.S. culture has developed a sense of competitiveness which has, in turn, led to the need to be heard. Americans are not shy about supporting their ideas. Honesty and directness are estimated, and being open is often seen as a means of resolving problems and disbelieves. Americans may think that they are leading to resolve a situation by being open and direct, while anyone from a different culture could appreciate this as being quite rude.

Appendix 4.3.
Federal Holidays

New Year's Day (January 1)

New Year's Day is the first day of the year, in the Gregorian calendar, and is celebrated nearly one week after the Christmas Day of the previous year.

New Year's Day is considered to be a public holiday in all countries that maintain the Gregorian calendar; some countries may also have January 2nd as

an additional holiday. It is traditionally celebrated with firework observations across the world at 00:00 in the local time zones.

In many cities in America, festive parades, football matches, and various spectacular events are held on New Year's Eve. According to the unanimous opinion of Americans, the largest and most cheerful New Year's parade takes place in Times Square in New York. The ceremonial descent of the famous Ball, which sparkles with thousands of neon lights, also takes place here.

Popular festivals The Pantomime Parade and the Tournament of Roses are closely connected with the New Year holiday. The traditions of these festivals originated in the middle of the last century. The Pantomime Parade is a 10-hour show that was organized by Irish immigrants in Philadelphia. Participants of the festive parade - musicians, dancers, clowns, etc., dressed in colorful costumes, led by the leader, the Pantomime King, march through the streets of the city with musical accompaniment.

New Year in America, unlike other American holidays, does not have strict culinary canons. A glass of champagne is the only obligatory attribute of the celebration. New Year's gifts for Americans are desirable, but, nevertheless, not obligatory. Americans see out the old year until midnight with the traditional old song "Auld Lang Syne" (translated as "Good Old Times"), and then welcome the New Year.

One of the important attributes of the New Year is the old man (symbol of the past year) and the baby (personification of the New Year). For Americans, the New Year is the beginning of a new life. Most Americans time various important changes in their lives to the holiday.

Birthday of Martin Luther King, Jr. (Third Monday in January)

Birthday of Martin Luther King, Jr. is one of federal holidays recognized nationwide by the Government of United States, and all federal employees are paid even if they receive the day off. Martin Luther King, Jr. Day is celebration of civil rights champion Martin Luther King, Jr. It is celebrated every third Monday of January, and has been a federal holiday since 1983.

This day is usually marked by civil and public events in the country in memory of Dr. King's legacy as the world's most famous fighter for black rights. As is known, in his fight for black equality, against discrimination, racism and segregation, King used the principle of non-violence and boycott. He also actively opposed the participation of the U.S. army in the Vietnam War. In the last years of his life, Martin Luther King's attention was drawn not only to the problems of racism, but also to unemployment, hunger and poverty throughout America.

Martin Luther King is known for his "I Have a Dream" speech, which was heard by about 300 thousand Americans at the foot of the Lincoln Monument during the March on Washington in 1963. In this speech, he proclaimed his vision of a future where white and black people could coexist as equals.

For his important contribution to the democratization of American society, Martin Luther King was awarded the Nobel Peace Prize in 1964. He was assassinated in Memphis, Tennessee, allegedly by James Earl Ray. In 2004, King was posthumously awarded the highest U.S. honor, the Congressional Gold Medal.

Inauguration Day (January 20, every 4 years following a presidential election)

Inauguration Day is the day when the newly elected president and vice-president are sworn in and take office.

Inauguration Day occurs every four years on January 20 (or January 21 if January 20 falls on a Sunday). The inauguration ceremony takes place at the U.S. Capitol building in Washington, DC. The vice-president-elected is sworn in first and repeats the same oath of office, in use since 1884, as senators, representatives, and other federal employees:

"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will support and defend the Constitution of the United States against all enemies, foreign and domestic; that I will bear true faith and allegiance to the same; that I take this obligation freely, without any mental reservation or purpose of evasion; and that I will well and faithfully discharge the duties of the office on which I am about to enter: So help me God."

Later, the newly elected president recites the following oath in accordance with Article II, Section I of the U.S. Constitution:

"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the Office of President of the United States, and will to the best of my ability, preserve, protect and defend the Constitution of the United States."

Washington's Birthday (Also known as Presidents Day; third Monday in February)

Officially Washington’s Birthday, but colloquially known as President’s Day, is a celebration of the first president of the United States. It is celebrated every third Monday of February, and has been a federal holiday since 1879.

Traditionally, February 22 is the birthday of George Washington, the Founding Father of the United States. George Washington led the Continental Army during the war for the independence of the American colonies against

Great Britain. In 1789, George Washington was elected the first President of the United States of America, then re-elected for a second term, and he refused a third term as President.

The history of the holiday in honor of George Washington began in 1778. On February 22, a military band played several marches in honor of the commander-in-chief. Since then, military parades have been held in his honor. In the state of Virginia, this tradition still exists – George Washington Birthday Parade.

At the beginning of the 19th century, George Washington's Birthday became a national holiday. On this day, public figures speak, luxurious balls are held. In 1885, the holiday received national status.

Memorial Day (Last Monday in May)

Memorial Day is dedicated to the memory of all U.S. Armed forces who have died while serving their country. Memorial Day was originally known as Decoration Day. It is celebrated every last Monday of May, and has been a federal holiday since 1967. On this day, Americans pay tribute to the memory of those who died in all wars, armed conflicts and all citizens of the United States of America who have passed away.

On May 5, 1868, by Order No. 11, General John Logan, the national commander of the Old Army of the Republic, officially proclaimed May 30 Memorial Day. In 1971, Congress passed a law according to which Memorial Day is now celebrated not on May 30, but on the last Monday in May.

In 1873, New York State was the first state to officially recognize the holiday. By the end of the 19th century, Memorial Day was celebrated almost throughout the country.

Traditionally, on Memorial Day, the President of the United States gives a short speech and lays wreaths at the Tomb of the Unknown Soldier at Arlington Cemetery in Washington. Representatives of the American armed forces fire a salute from small arms. A parade takes place on the main street of Washington. National flags are lowered throughout the country until noon. At three o'clock in the afternoon, a minute of silence is observed throughout the United States.

Flag day (June 14)

During the American War of Independence, on June 14, 1777, the Continental Congress adopted the Stars and Stripes as the official flag of the new country. Throughout its history, the American flag has changed many times, depending on the number of states that were part of the Union.

Currently, the American flag is a rectangular cloth with 13 red and white stripes, which symbolize the original 13 colonies in 1776. In the upper left corner is a blue canton with 51 white stars, which correspond to the number of American states. The red color on the flag represents valor and endurance, white - purity and innocence, and dark blue - justice and diligence.

The tradition of celebrating American Flag Day began on June 14, 1885. In Fredonia, a young school teacher, Bernard J. Cigrand, held a ceremonial raising of the U.S. flag in the school yard, thereby instilling in his students a love for their country. On this day, the teacher and his students celebrated the 108th anniversary of the adoption of the state symbol as Flag Birthday. B.J. Cigrand also actively promoted the celebration of June 14 as Flag Birthday in the following years.

In 1916, the anniversary of the Flag Resolution of 1777 became a nationally accepted event by a proclamation by President Woodrow Wilson. However, it was not designated as National Flag Day until August 3, 1949, when an Act of Congress designated June 14 of each year as National Flag Day.

Today, Flag Day is celebrated with parades, contests, ceremonies sponsored by veterans groups, schools, and groups like the National Flag Day foundation whose goal is to preserve the traditions, history, pride, and respect that are due the nation's symbol.

The Stars and Stripes originated as a result of a resolution adopted by the Marine Committee of the Second Continental Congress at Philadelphia on June 14, 1777. The resolution read: "Resolved, that the flag of the United States be thirteen stripes, alternate red and white; that the union be thirteen stars, white in a blue field representing a new constellation."

Independence Day (July 4)

Independence Day commemorates the signing of the Declaration of Independence and the establishment of the United States as a sovereign nation. It is celebrated every July 4th, and has been a federal holiday since 1870.

In April 1775, under the slogans of defending freedom, 13 British colonies began military action against Great Britain. During the struggle, on July 4, 1776, representatives of the 13 colonies signed the U.S. Declaration of Independence and certified it with the signatures of the President of the Continental Congress John Hancock and Secretary Charles Thomson. For the first time in an official document, the 13 colonies were referred to as the United States of America and proclaimed as a union state independent of the Kingdom of Great Britain. The signing ceremony of the Declaration, written on parchment, was held on August 2, 1776. The names of 56 people who signed

the Declaration, the "birth certificate" of the new state, entered the history of the United States.

The original Declaration of Independence of the United States is a national treasure of America and is kept in the National Archives in Washington. During the daytime, the Document is on public display in the archive hall. On Independence Day, actors dressed in 18th-century camisoles and hats perform and read the text of the Declaration to visitors.

An important event of the holiday is the parade in Washington, which takes place at noon. On this day, American citizens hang the U.S. flag on their houses, organize public festivities, concerts, carnivals, ceremonies, arrange festive fireworks, and hold various outdoor events. But there are regional features of celebrating Independence Day.

Columbus Day (Second Monday in October)

Columbus day represents the arrival of the Christopher Columbus in the Americas. It is celebrated every second Monday of October, and has been a federal holiday since 1937.

On October 12, 1492, Christopher Columbus, leading an expedition of 90 people, arrived in the New World on the island of Guanahani (now San Salvador) in the Bahamas. This day is the official date of the discovery of America.

This Day was first celebrated on October 12, 1792 in New York. And in 1892, the first official celebration of Columbus Day took place in the United States. The solemn celebration of the 400th anniversary of the discovery of America was accompanied by colorful parades, theatrical performances, sports events, fairs, festivals, and fireworks.

In 1937, on the initiative of U.S. President Franklin Roosevelt, Columbus Day was declared a national (federal) holiday. From 1937 to 1970, Columbus Day was celebrated on October 12, and since 1971, U.S. President Richard Nixon moved the holiday to the second Monday in October.

Veterans Day (November 11)

Veterans Day is a remembrance of all U.S. military veterans – past and present. It is celebrated every November 11th, and has been a federal holiday since 1926. This holiday was known as Armistice Day, and the celebration was held in honor of American veterans of World War I. The date was not chosen by chance - November 11, 1918, the day the First World War ended.

Currently, Veterans Day is a special memorial day for veterans of all wars in which the United States of America took part.

On this day, veterans' parades are traditionally held, and at Arlington National Cemetery, the U.S. President solemnly lays wreaths at the Tomb of the Unknown Soldier.

Thanksgiving Day (Fourth Thursday in November)

Thanksgiving Day is one of the most beloved and popular holidays in America, which is celebrated annually on the fourth Thursday of November. Thanksgiving Day is a holiday of the harvest, expression of gratitude and thanksgiving to God, family, friends for kindness and material well-being. There are still disputes about the origin of the holiday, but Americans are inclined to believe that the first Thanksgiving Day was celebrated by English colonists on the Plymouth plantations in Massachusetts in the fall of 1621. At that time, not everyone was able to survive the harsh winter and died of cold and hunger. However, the surviving colonists, having put in a lot of effort, gathered a good harvest. The governor of the colonists W. Bradford initiated the celebration of a rich harvest and thanking the Almighty. Nowadays, the holiday in the United States does not have a religious character.

In 1789, the first U.S. President George Washington proposed to celebrate Thanksgiving Day on November 26 as a national holiday. On December 26, 1941, U.S. President Franklin Roosevelt approved the celebration of Thanksgiving Day on the fourth Thursday of November.

Traditionally, on Thanksgiving Day, Americans go to church, and then several generations of one family gather for a festive dinner at the home of their elders. Everyone says words of gratitude and thanks for all the good things that have happened in their lives.

Some dishes have become symbols of the holiday - stuffed turkey and pumpkin pie. Traditional table decorations - young pumpkin, oranges, apples, chestnuts, bunches of grapes, nuts - represent the abundance of generous autumn gifts of nature. The holiday of a rich harvest is complemented by luxurious bouquets of red-brown, gold, orange chrysanthemums and branches with berries.

Christmas Day (December 25)

Christmas is a Christian holiday commemorating the birth of Christ. It is celebrated every December 25th, and has been a federal holiday since 1885.

Americans usually celebrate the family holiday Christmas for several days. In schools, Christmas holidays begin on these days and continue until the New Year. The tradition of decorating a fir tree appeared in America at the end of the 19th century. At that time, the fir tree was decorated with candies, colored paper and apples, and later with candles.

Every home has an obligatory attribute of the holiday – stockings for gifts that children hang by the fireplace on Christmas Eve. According to legend, St. Nicholas was driving past the house of a poor nobleman, noticed the stockings of the owner's daughters drying by the fireplace and threw small bags of gold into the chimney. The gifts fell into the stockings and became a beautiful dowry for the girls.

Traditionally, Americans hang mistletoe branches wrapped in a ribbon over the entrance to the house. On Christmas Day, Americans traditionally exchange gifts. Christmas gifts are given to children, relatives and close friends. Many Americans prepare a variety of treats and congratulate friends and neighbors. Those friends and relatives who are away from home on this holiday are sent Christmas cards with wonderful wishes for a Merry Christmas.

Appendix 4.4.
State Holidays

States and the District of Columbia may recognize their own holidays, such as Emancipation Day or Indigenous Peoples' Day. These holidays recognize events and people important to a state's history and culture.

Emancipation Day

June 19 is Emancipation Day (Juneteenth) in the United States. This is a relatively new national holiday established to commemorate the complete abolition of slavery in the country after the Civil War.

On June 19, 1865, slavery was abolished in Texas City, nearly three years after President Lincoln issued the Emancipation Proclamation on September 22, 1862. Union General Gordon Granger announced the federal order in Galveston, Texas, on June 19, 1865. It declared that all slaves in Texas were free. Abraham Lincoln's Emancipation Proclamation had formally outlawed slavery in Texas and other states in rebellion against the Union nearly two and a half years earlier. Enforcement of the Proclamation was largely dependent on the advance of Union troops. Texas, the most remote of the slave states, had only a small number of Union troops due to the end of the American Civil War. Thus, enforcement of the Proclamation was slow and inconsistent until Granger's announcement. Activists have campaigned for years to get the U.S. Congress to recognize Juneteenth as a national holiday. Hawaii, North Dakota, and South Dakota are the only states that do not recognize the holiday, according to the Congressional Research Service. Despite this, two-thirds of

Americans support the decision to celebrate the event. Since Juneteenth falls on a Sunday this year, Emancipation Day is celebrated on Monday, June 20. A number of federal institutions are closed on the day.

Indigenous Peoples' Day

Indigenous Peoples' Day, first celebrated in the United States in 1990, brings recognition to the first nations inhabiting the land. Controversy over the celebration of Christopher Columbus led to a renaming of the holiday. In many states, the day now honors Indigenous people.

This Indigenous Peoples' Day, consider the history behind Columbus Day and the people who first inhabited the Americas. Celebrate the holiday by honoring the rich history and vibrant culture of Indigenous communities.

Beginning in 1937, the United States government honored Christopher Columbus with a national holiday. Observed on the second Monday in October, the holiday celebrates Columbus for his explorations, discoveries, and cultural background.

Indigenous Peoples' Day asks individuals to consider the true history of American lands. The holiday represents an honoring of Indigenous people and provides an opportunity to celebrate Indigenous traditions and culture.

Fifteen states and the District of Columbia officially celebrate Indigenous Peoples' Day, two of which equally celebrate Columbus Day. Additionally, over 100 cities officially honor the new holiday across nearly 20 states. Advocates continue to push for widespread honoring of the Indigenous people of the Americas.

Europeans' oppression of Indigenous people led to the near erasure of Indigenous history and culture across the developing United States. Nevertheless, Indigenous communities continue to work diligently to pass down cultural elements and historical narratives from one generation to the next.

Appendix 4.5.
Ethnic And Religious Holidays

Various ethnic and religious groups in the United States celebrate days with special meaning to them. These holidays include Easter, Haloween for Christians, the High Holy Days for Jews, Ramadan for Muslims, Day of Vesak for Buddhists, and Diwali for Hindus. Here are some of them:

Easter Day

Easter is a church holiday dedicated to the resurrection of Jesus Christ. This is one of the main and favorite holidays of Orthodox Christians in America.

The great holiday of Easter begins with Forgiveness Sunday. Awareness of one's sins and repentance, as well as a willingness to forgive and sacrifice prepare for the holiday of Easter. During Lent, Orthodox Christians prepare themselves for a wonderful spiritual holiday. The final preparations take place on Mandy Thursday of the pre-Easter week – they bake Easter cakes, paskha, and paint eggs. On Good Friday, they observe a strict fast – only bread and water.

On the holiday, Easter baskets are decorated with ribbons and live bows. It is customary to decorate your home with pots of lilies and bring them to church. Symbols of Easter – lily, cottage cheese Easter, Easter cake and painted eggs are displayed on a towel in the refectory, candles are lit and they wait for the end of the service.

Halloween Day

There are various symbols associated with Halloween. These include the spooks, ghosts and walking skeletons that represent the contact between the spiritual and physical world and between the living and the dead. Human figures that are often represented on Halloween are witches and wizards, who are seen to have the power to contact the spirit world. Bats, black cats, and spiders are often connected with this holiday. These animals are associated with the night and darkness and often accompany witches and wizards.

Traditionally, Halloween is celebrated in the United States on October 31 – the eve of All Saints' Day. Americans look forward to this holiday with the same impatience as Christmas. Halloween in the United States is an all-American carnival, for which Americans prepare unusual costumes in advance. It is believed that the history of Halloween is at least two thousand years old. The origins of the holiday come from the culture of the ancient Celts.

According to one version, in the 19th century, Irish immigrants brought the holiday to the United States, where it has been celebrated since 1846. There is a pagan belief that on Halloween, the souls of the dead return to their homes and collect donations in the form of food.

An integral symbol of Halloween is a backlit pumpkin head. The pumpkin symbolizes the end of the harvest, as well as the evil spirit and the fire that scares it away. Among the outfits, the most popular are costumes of witches and sorcerers, magicians, ghosts, vampires, elves, as well as various nocturnal animals (bat, cat, wolf, etc.)

Children in costumes and masks go begging for sweets from neighboring houses, saying the traditional phrase – "Trick or Treat!" Posters and books with images of witches, vampires and their symbols are hung everywhere.

For some time now, in the United States, there has been a tradition of playing the Halloween symbol in bowling. Participants use pumpkins instead of balls, and the winner is the one who knocks down more pins with a pumpkin.

Ramadan holiday

Muslim Americans, like all Americans, represent diverse cultures and traditions found around the world. Ramadan displays this diversity in many ways, including the food prepared for early morning *suhoor* and sunset *iftar* meals.

As many American Muslims follow their ancestry all over the other corners of the globe, Ramadan traditions in the United States are diverse. Immigrants often recall their first Ramadan in the United States as a time they learned new customs.

Every Muslim tries to control time during Ramadan days. Fasting begins at dawn and ends with sunset. Many families keep a clock that announces the call to prayer with each of the five prayer times. When the time for the Maghrib prayer comes in, Muslims can break their fast.

Speaking of breaking the fast, Muslims often do so with a date and water. Muslims try extra hard to act on the sunnah during the month of Ramadan, and eating a date is an easy way to incorporate one.

After breaking the fast with a date, many Muslims enjoy eating traditional foods from their homelands with Ramadan-specific recipes passed down from previous generations.

In Ramadan, Muslims try to build a stronger connection with the Quran, Islam's Holy Book. A verse in the Quran is called an "ayah", and the sayings of the Prophet Muhammad are called "hadith". American Muslim parents try to get their kids involved in Ramadan festivities. While fasting is not obligated until the age of puberty, the spirit of Ramadan spreads to all members of the family. Decorating cupcakes are definitely a way to bring a smile to any face, fasting or not.

Day of Vesak

This full moon marks the celebration of Vesak, commemorating the birth and passing of the Buddha. On this day, we recognize the contributions of Buddhist communities across the United States, exemplifying the religious diversity that has strengthened our nation for generations. Buddhists around the world are free to celebrate Vesak in accordance with their traditions and values.

Vesak is a Buddhist festival that celebrates three important events in the life of Siddhartha Gautama: his birth, enlightenment, and death. Vesak is more commonly celebrated in the Americas, which has many interesting and unique cultures.

Appendix 4.6.
U.S. prominent people
(In alphabetical order)

Abraham Lincoln

Abraham Lincoln was an American politician from Kentucky. He was the second presidential candidate of the then-new Republican Party. He served as President of the United States from 1861 to 1865, during the American Civil War. He was assassinated in April 1865, the first of four American presidents to be assassinated in bureau.

In his political career in the 1830s, Lincoln defended the construction of the Illinois and Michigan Canal, which connected the Great Lakes to the Gulf of Mexico and the Mississippi River. Lincoln won the Whig administration in 1846, and went on to win the voting process. He served as a congressman from 1847 to 1849. During this time, Lincoln was the only Whig in the Illinois deputation.

During the 1850s, Lincoln was one of Illinois' leading lawyers. He appeared before the Illinois Supreme Court in 175 cases, and was the basic counsel in 51 of these cases.

In 1856, Lincoln formally joined the Republican Party. At the June of 1856, Lincoln was one of the applicants for the party's nomination for Vice President of the U.S. Lincoln assumed 110 votes, finishing second among the candidates.

Lincoln commenced his presidency in March 1861. In September 1862, Lincoln issued the Emancipation Proclamation, which claimed the liberation of slaves in 10 Confederate states. The Proclamation came into force effect on January 1, 1863.

Lincoln ran for re-election in the 1864 United States presidential election. Historians tend to rank Lincoln among the top Presidents of the United States. Due to his tragic death, he was regarded as "a national martyr". Several political alignments assume their origins to Lincoln's ideas and policies. He has been characterized as "a classical liberal" of the 19th-century, and is well-regarded for his courses maintaining trade and business.

Albert Einstein

Albert Einstein was born in Kingdom of Württemberg, to a German Jewish family. Albert began reading and studying science at a young age, and he graduated from a Swiss high school when he was 17. He left the high school in 1900, and became a Swiss citizen in 1901. He began working at the Swiss Patent Office and extended his scientific researches. He taught at universities in Zurich, Prague, and Berlin, and continued his investigations in physics.

During the World War II he was obliged to move to the United States, and he was given a post at the Institute for Advanced Study in New Jersey. Einstein was heavily involved in attempting to bring about world peace in his later life, and he did not give up his scientific research until his death in 1955.

Bill Clinton

His father, a sales representative, died in a car accident a few months before his birth. His mother then moved to New Orleans. Bill Clinton initially grew up with his grandparents.

From 1986 to 1987, Clinton ministered as chairman of the National Governors Association. In July 1991 he was appointed as the Democratic presidential candidate. In the presidential election on November 3, 1992, Clinton won over George H. W. Bush. He then moved into the White House on January 20, 1993 as the 42nd President of the United States of America.

At 46, he was the third youngest president in the history of the United States, after Theodore Roosevelt and John F. Kennedy. Clinton's crucial achievements during his term on duty were the introduction of health insurance, negotiation with Vietnam, and fighting drug abuse, gun brutality, and poverty in the country and the world.

The former U.S. President was loyal to fighting poverty, corruption and climate change worldwide. For his indefatigable tries to help the poorest, Bill Clinton was awarded the German media prize "Bambi" in the "Charity" category in Germany in December 2005.

Bill Gates

Bill Gates as a child was very competitive, inquisitive and a depth thinker. His parents decided to enroll him in the private preparation school, Lakeside School. Gates soon stood out at Lakeside, where he made himself oriented to a wide variety of subject ranging from Math, Science, and English Literature. In 1969, Apollo 11 took men to the moon, this engaged huge computers, and which cost billions of dollars to function and serve. A computer during that era, was very authentic to have. However, Lakeside made a deal with the city of Seattle and it became Bill Gates first encounter toward a computer.

In 1986, Bill Gates set Microsoft Windows which would become one of the most used operational systems in history, and one of the most developed. Apple around that time came up with smart software, Gates recommended them to have a copyright, and however the previous was more set on selling computers, this prompted Gates to make a chance of a profitable opportunity. At the age of 31, Gates became a billionaire owning 45% of his stock.

Bill Gates changed the way the world functions, Gates made life easier for humans to live in. He will forever be remembered as a business man, philanthropist, and investor. Bill Gates with multiple products unleashed with his company Microsoft, permitted the technology spheres to expand and become more competitive, always setting the stakes much higher and with countless inventions.

Elvis Presley

Elvis Aaron Presley was born on January 8, 1935 in East Tupelo, Mississippi. Elvis did quite a lot to maintain early rock and roll music. He commenced his career as a performer of country music and rhythm and blues, with a strong backbeat. His narrative versions of existing songs, mixing 'black' and 'white' sounds, made him well-known over the world. He recorded songs in the rock and roll genre, with tracks like "Jailhouse Rock" and "Hound Dog". Presley had a miscellaneous voice and had extraordinary wide success embracing other genres, including gospel, blues, ballads and pop music.

Elvis returned to the scenes in the 1970s with live concerts starting in Las Vegas with over 57 sold-out shows. He made trips throughout the United States, appearing on-stage in over 500 live appearances, many of them sold out shows.

Since his death, Graceland has become a temple for millions of followers all over the world. To date, Elvis Presley is the only performer to have been awarded into three separate music 'Halls of Fame'. Throughout his career, he set records for concert visitors, television ratings and recordings sales, and remains one of the best-selling and most powerful singers in the history of popular music.

Franklin D. Roosevelt

When Franklin Roosevelt was elected President in 1933, more than 15 million Americans were unemployed. Millions more had been hard hit by the Depression and the banking system had crashed. He created the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC), which made not the banks but the federal government the guarantor of people's bank deposits. He launched public works programs thus making the government abolish outlawing child labor, especially in mines, factories and textile factories. Regarding the Depression, FDR forever shifted the role of the federal government in American life. He was easily reelected in 1936 and he was less successful than his first presidential period. The Supreme Court had marked a number of New Deal measures outmatching to the Constitution.

There was a sophisticated funeral for him, with a train parade to Hyde Park where he was buried.

George Washington

George Washington was a pivotal figure in American history, known for his leadership during the American Revolution, his role in the formation of the United States, and his service as the nation's first president.

Washington was appointed Commander-in-Chief of the Continental Army during the American Revolutionary War, leading the colonists in their fight for independence against Great Britain. After the Revolution, Washington played a crucial role in the formation of the U.S.Constitution. His presence lent probability to the proceedings, and his support in assuring the document's approval.

One of Washington's main foreign policy achievements was his designation to keep the United States indifferent in the conflict between France and Britain. This helped the young nation get away from becoming "tangled" in European wars.

Washington was regarded as a symbol of national unity and immunity. His governance style, marked by his responsibility to republican ideals, deserved him the title "Father of His Country."

George Washington's achievements helped shape the American republic. From leading the Revolutionary War to promoting the nation's political and economic systems, Washington's governance proceeds to affect the United States today. His commitment to principles of democracy, liberty, and unity remains basic to American identity.

Henry Ford

Henry Ford was an American industrialist, business baron, constitutor of the Ford Motor Company, and chief cultivator of the assembly of mass production. By making the first automobile that middle-class Americans could afford, he rendered the automobile from an precious luxury into an obtainable transport.

He revolutionized the automobile industry and modern manufacturing with the introduction of mass production technique. In 1903, Ford launched the Ford Motor Company, after several unsuccessful attempts with earlier companies. The company was determined to manufacture affordable cars for the general public, not just the rich elite.

Ford's success influenced other manufacturers worldwide, both in the automobile industry and in the manufacturing sector as a whole.

Ford's approach to business transformed the automotive industry and the nature of work in the 20th century, influencing modern production methods and the structure of the labor market.

Martin Luther King

Martin Luther King Jr. was born on January 15, 1929, in Atlanta, Georgia. For Martin the civil rights movement began one summer in 1935 when he was six years old. Two of his friends did not come to play ball with him and Martin decided to go seeing them. When mother of one of the boys' met him at the front door told him in a tough tone that her son would not play with him again as they were quite different in colour. Years later, Martin confessed that those rude words changed the direction of his life.

In August 1963, Martin Luther King's most significant political action took place: the March on Washington for Labor and Freedom which gathered 200-300 thousand people at the Abraham Lincoln Memorial. About 80% of the marchers were African – Americans and 20% were whites and representatives of other races. Here, King delivered a speech called "I have a dream", calling for equality in the rights of the black and white population of the United States.

Later, Martin Luther King's speech was recognized by the American public speaking community as the best in the 20th century. The main political outcome of the March was the adoption of two key laws: the Civil Rights Act, which prohibited discrimination based on race, color, gender, or ethnicity, unequal application of voter registration requirements, racial segregation in schools and public places, as well as discrimination in employment, and the Voting Rights Act, which prohibits racial discrimination in voting. A year later, *The Times* magazine named Martin Luther King as the man of the year, and the Nobel Committee will award him the Peace Prize.

Martin Luther King was fatally shot on April 4, 1968. He was in Memphis, leading another major protest. The sniper fired a bullet at him as he stood on the balcony. He died of his wound at St. Joseph's Hospital and was buried in Atlanta. This murder caused national outrage, which was accompanied by riots of the black population in more than a hundred cities. In the eyes of activists, King's murder symbolized the continuity of the system and assured thousands of people that nonviolent opposition leads to a sorrowful end.

Muhammad Ali

Muhammad Ali was a well-known boxer of the history and a launcher of modern boxing as a type of sport. He was awarded “Sportsman of the Year”, “Honorary Doctorate”, “World Boxing Hall of Fame Induction Award”, “National Sports Award”, “Annual Trumpet Award”, “One America Award”, etc.

He beat more champions and top contenders than any heavyweight champion in history. He defeated heavyweight kings Sonny Liston, Floyd Patterson; he defeated light-heavyweight champions Archie Moore and Bob Foster. Ali defeated

European heavyweight champions, British and Commonwealth king Brian London. All of Ali's defeats were by heavyweight champions. Ali also beat undefeated fighters Sonny Banks, Rudi Lubbers, Billy Daniels, and George Foreman.

Neil Armstrong

Neil Armstrong (1930–2012) was an American astronaut, aerospace engineer, and naval aviator, best known for being the first person to walk on the Moon. He made history on July 20, 1969, as the commander of Apollo 11. The main goal of this ship was to land humans on the lunar surface during the U.S. space program.

Armstrong's famous words when he first stepped onto the Moon were: "That's one small step for [a] man, one giant leap for mankind."

After his spaceflight career, Armstrong turned into a professor of aerospace engineering at the Cincinnati University and took on several other leadership roles, as well as in the private sector. He was awarded various honors, including the Presidential Medal of Freedom, the Congressional Gold Medal, and the Congressional Space Medal of Honor.

Neil Armstrong's heritage remains as one of the determinate figures in space exploration and a symbol of human success in overcoming extraordinary invocation.

Ronald Reagan

Ronald Wilson Reagan was born in Tampico, Illinois. His father was of Irish origin, and his mother was of half English and half Scottish descent.

A prosperous actor beginning in the 1930s, the immature Reagan was a staunch admirer of President Franklin D. Roosevelt, and was a Democrat in the 1940s, a self-described "bleeding" liberal. He was elected president of the Screen Actors Guild in 1947 and served five years during the most tumultuous times to ever hit Hollywood.

Reagan was well known to the world for his citations, the most spread of them was what he said to Mikhail Gorbachev in 1987. "Mister Gorbachev, tear down this wall" said Reagan standing in front of the Berlin Wall. That appeal made an influence on the course of human history. Ronald Reagan played many roles in his life like a radio speaker, film star, union leader, warden, right-wing critic and President of the United States.

Thomas A. Edison

Thomas A. Edison was born on February 11, 1847 in Milan, Ohio. He was a producer and director, known for silent movies such as, The Trick Cyclist

(1901), The Patchwork Girl of Oz (1914) and Bicycle Trick Riding, No. 2 (1899). He also shot the first American film version of Frankenstein in 1910. This made a road to modern day horror movies. Edison is however, perhaps better known as an inventor of many facilities like the light bulb. He produced many other inventions like, the phonograph, power stations, the carbon switch microphone, and motion picture cameras. These progressions gave him a steady place in the history of American Greatness as well as American film production.

He died on October 18, 1931 in West Orange, New Jersey, USA.

Thomas Jefferson

Thomas Jefferson was an American statesman, philosopher, architect, lawyer, and Founding Father who served as the third president of the United States from 1801 to 1809. He was previously the second vice president of the United States under John Adams and the first United States secretary of state under George Washington. The principal author of the Declaration of Independence, Jefferson was a proponent of democracy, republicanism, and individual rights, motivating American colonists to break from the Kingdom of Great Britain and form a new nation. He produced formative documents and decisions at state, national, and international levels.

Walt Disney

Walter Elias Disney was born on December 5, 1901 in Chicago, Illinois. He had Irish, German, and English ancestry. At age 16, during World War I, he imitated his age to join the American Red Cross. He soon returned home, where he gained a scholarship to study at the Kansas City Art Institute.

In the mid 1940s, he began producing "wrapped features", essentially a group of short ones put together, but by 1950 he began manufacturing animated features like Alise in Wonderland or Peter Pen. These began wide-spreading throughout the 50s and 60s, but Walt went on with producing animated features, including Lady and the Tramp, Sleeping Beauty, and 101 Dalmatians.

In 1955 he opened a park in southern California called *Disneyland*. It was a place where children and their parents could enjoy their time exploring the familiar animated characters, all in a safe atmosphere. It was another crucial prosperity. Walt also became one of the first filmmakers to venture into television, with his series Disneyland, which he began in 1954 to promote his theme park. He is also the creator of Micky Mouse Club (1955) and Zorro (1957).

His company endures prospering and still producing animated and live-action films started by one prominent man: Walt Disney.

Appendix 4.7
Some of prominent American writers
(In alphabetical order)

Arthur Miller

Arthur Miller (1915–2005) was a prominent American playwright, critic, and essayist widely famous as one of the influential dramatists of the 20th century. His works examine issues facing individuals and society, often examining topics of guilt, obligation, and the American Dream.

Many of Miller's plays review the American Dream, which was often depicted as a way to success and happiness. His works explore the conflict between personal pursuit and moral continuity, often depicting how the ambition of this ideal can cause disappointment. Miller investigated the entanglement of human behavior, focusing on individual character and moral world. His heroes are often characterized by personal ardors and expectations, which cause soulful conflicts.

In his prominent plays he tried to enlighten the disappointment with the American Dream, the conflict between personal wishes and expectations, and the pressures of capitalism, the dangers of extremism, betrayal, the collision between personal privilege and social laws.

Together with the Pulitzer Prize, Miller obtained various other awards, including the National Medal of Arts, the Tony Award, and the Kennedy Center Honor. He is regarded one of the main voices in American theater and has had a lasting effect on dramatic literature.

Miller proceeded to write plays and screenplays all his life. His plays have been translated into many languages and remain pertinent today, often being performed in different theaters around the world. His research of universal themes of personal immunity, societal pressures, and moral liability has gained him a place as one of the greatest playwrights in American history.

Edgar Alan Poe

Edgar Allan Poe (1809–1849) was an American writer, poet, and literary critic who is prominent for his endowments to the genres of the short story. His writings effected both the horror genre and the development of modern literature. Poe is often distincted with designating and popularizing the modern short story. He wrote a series of crucial works showing how a short story could be a focused tale, with a unified theme. His theory of the short story underlined unity of effect, with each element of the story contributing to a lonely emotional

effect. Some of his famous short stories comprise: "The Black Cat", "The Tell-Tale Heart", "The Fall of the House of Usher", etc.

Poe's works are defined with launching the detective genre, especially through his character C. Auguste Dupin in stories like "The Murders in the Rue Morgue". Dupin is often respected as a predecessor to subsequent fictional detectives such as Sherlock Holmes.

Poe's works often burrowed into the psychology of heroes in states of disaster, and his use of the Gothic style – gloomy, atmospheric settings and themes of breakdown and fear – became crucial to his reputation.

Poe's poem "The Raven" (1845) is one of the most well-known and everlasting works in American literature. The themes of melancholy, obsession, and grief have made it a prominent. His poetry has affected many poets, particularly in terms of structure, promoting the development of American Romantic poetry.

Poe worked as an editor for several literary journals, most notably Graham's Magazine, where he aided to shaping the literary tendency of that period. He was a conqueror of American literature and took part in discussions about the literary trends of his period.

In conclusion, Edgar Allan Poe's contributions lie not only in his unforgettable works but also in the lasting effect he has had on literature, particularly in mystery and short stories. His capacity to dig into the human psychology, his mastery of atmosphere, and his imagination proceed to captivate readers and affect writers to modern time.

Ernest Hemingway

Ernest Hemingway (1899–1961) is regarded as a significant American novelist, journalist and short story writer. Hemingway is considered as one of the most powerful writers of the 20th century. His plays often research themes of war, love, deprivation, and existential battle. Below are some of his prominent works and main features of his writing:

The Sun Also Rises concerns disillusionment, post war existential slump, the search for significance of life, and the results of failure.

A Farewell to Arms describes the cruelty of war, the passing character of love and courage. The novel points to the way how war demolishes one's personal life emotionally.

For Whom the Bell Tolls stands for heroism, collapse, love, and the sense of belonging to a greater reason.

The Old Man and the Sea shows the longing and endless battle between nature and man, human persistence, loneliness, and the importance of the human spirit.

Hemingway is often related to a minimalist writing style. His prose is famously direct, emphatically simple, clear, and short of words. This requires readers to draw into the text more deeply in order to understand its emotional meaning. Hemingway's use of dialogue is central in his writings. His characters often speak in derived exchanges that disclose more through what is unsaid than through what is spoken directly.

Hemingway's style has had a crucial effect on modern American literature. His emphasis on clarity and the power of subtext influenced a great number of writers, including John Steinbeck, Raymond Carver and Charles Bukowski. His investigation of human frailty and tension also gave the way to modern researchers of existentialism.

F. Scott Fitzgerald

F. Scott Fitzgerald is often considered as one of the greatest American writers of the previous century, prominent for his novels and short stories. His success prolonged both during his lifetime and posthumously.

It is an undeniable fact that his masterpiece, *The Great Gatsby* did not gain the deserved attention during his lifetime. The famous novel tells the tragic story of Jay Gatsby's obsessive chase of Daisy Buchanan, relevantly, the American Dream itself. Firstly, The Great Gatsby was accepted with heartwarming reception of low sales, but it is now estimated as one of the greatest American novels, a defining work of 20th-century literature.

In the following years after his death, Fitzgerald's work gained popularity for its excellence and deep cultural importance. The Great Gatsby was considered to symbolize the moral decomposition of the American Dream, and its investigation of love and ambition influenced highly its readers from various generations. Today, Fitzgerald is well-known not only for The Great Gatsby but also for his capacity of getting the psyche of his period and for depicting portrayal of human lacks.

Fitzgerald’s success is now considered as both tragic and victorious—his talent and inheritance tolerated, though he faced great personal and professional challenges throughout his life.

Jack London

Jack London (1876–1916) was an American author, social activist, journalist, best known for his adventure novels. His works themes draw attention to the survival process, individualism, and the primal instincts of living beings.

London is the author of more than 50 books, various short stories, and articles, written in both fiction and non-fiction genre.

His writings were successfully translated into more than 60 languages, making him prominent in the international sphere during his lifetime. His famous works are “White Fang”, “Martin Eden”, ‘The Call of the Wild”, “The Sea-Wolf”, etc.

London’s writing contributed to the development of adventure fiction and influenced later authors such as Ernest Hemingway and Robert Service. His studies of human instincts, as well as his focus on the stretch between growth and nature, made his work innovative in its time.

In summary, Jack London was a diversified and miscellaneous writer whose achievements spread beyond his borders. His works have left a lasting impression on literature, forming the adventure genre, naturalism, and the way we view the complication of human nature.

John Steinbeck

John Steinbeck (1902–1968) was an American author who gained great success as a writer during his lifetime and remains one of the most famous characters in American literature. His writings cover themes of social equity, human misery, and the position of the low class, making him especially powerful in the scope of the Great Depression.

Some of his most prominent and widely spread novels include:

"The Grapes of Wrath": This is Steinbeck’s most renowned novel and one of the determinate works of 20th-century American literature. It tells the story of the Joad family, renter workers displaced by the Dust Bowl, as they move west to California in search of a relevant life.

"Of Mice and Men": This novella is another foundation of Steinbeck’s achievement. Set during the Great Depression, it tells the story of two migrant workers, George and Lennie, who fight for earning a living. Themes of loneliness, friendship, and the American Dream spread throughout the book. The novella’s lasting popularity lies in its ordinary and deep investigation of the human characters.

"East of Eden" (1952): This novel explores the complication of good and evil through two generations of families. Although it was not so greatly estimated, it is still labeled as one of his most crucial works.

Steinbeck was awarded the Nobel Prize in Literature in 1962 for his “realistic and imaginative works, combining as they do sympathetic humor and deep social perception.”

In summary, Steinbeck’s clear depictions of the difficulties of the working class, as well as his deep compassion for certain low-class groups, made his work significant not only in his time but also for following

generations of readers. His works have made an indiscussable effect on American literature and remain an integral part American culture.

Mark Twain

Mark Twain is one of the most renowned American authors and humorists. He is celebrated for his works that study American society, particularly the fields of race and morality. Twain's achievements are huge, beginning with his literary contributions ending to his impact on American culture.

"The Adventures of Tom Sawyer": This classic novel depicts the naughty Tom Sawyer and his adventures along the Mississippi River. It is one of the most beloved books in American literature and presents a deep view of childhood and American life.

"Adventures of Huckleberry Finn": Often regarded as Twain's masterpiece, this novel describes themes of racism, freedom, and morality through the adventures of Huck Finn and Jim, a runaway slave, as they travel down the Mississippi River. It is considered as one of the greatest novels, particularly for its use of native and folk language and its critical view of pre-Civil War America.

Together with his writing, Twain was an influential public speaker. He gave lectures throughout the United States and Europe, amusing audiences with his humorous anecdotes, deep observations, and social commentary. His personal experiences, including his relations with African Americans in the South, deeply influenced his views. Twain also advocated women's rights and was a strict critic of inequality and injustice throughout his life.

Twain's works were translated into many languages and widely read worldwide. His critical examinations of race, class, and society influenced readers deeply, and his inheritance continues to effect writers and activists.

In conclusion, Mark Twain's achievements as an author, humorist, and social critic have left a lasting effect on American literature, affecting the way people think about morality and the human life.

Theodore Dreiser

Theodore Dreiser (1871–1945) was a celebrated American novelist and journalist, best known for his naturalistic treatment of literature and his exploration of the deeper aspects of human society. His success can be assigned to his undeniable contributions to literature and his focus on social issues.

Before becoming a novelist, Dreiser worked as a journalist for various newspapers, including the Chicago Globe and New York World. His

journalistic experience allowed him to observe the social issues of his time, which would later become central themes in his fiction.

"Sister Carrie" which is Dreiser's progressive novel, is often considered as one of the greatest American works of literature. It tells the story of a young woman's rise from poverty to success in Chicago, focusing on her bindings with men and her search for personal fulfillment. The novel was initially met with criticism, but it later gained recognition as a marker of American fiction.

"An American Tragedy", perhaps Dreiser's most famous work, points out the tragic story of Clyde Griffith's, a young man who tries to climb the social ladder through manipulation and crimes. The novel investigates themes of ambition, class struggle, and the American Dream, illustrating the destroying consequences of a system that estimates success more than morality.

Dreiser is the author of several other novels, including The Financier and The Titan, both of which focus on the expansion of self-made men in the business world, examining the moral compromises they make.

Dreiser's impact on American literature is rich and keen. He helped to redefine the novel in America, accentuating social realism and naturalistic manners. His works have influenced generations of writers, including authors like John Steinbeck and Ernest Hemingway, who also made researches on the themes of class struggle and individual intention.

Though Dreiser was not widely famous in his lifetime, his works were increasingly recognized after his death, and today he is regarded as one of the most important characters of American literature. His focus on the complexity of human desires, the limitations imposed by society, and the struggles for success in a materialistic world continues to affect his readers.

The book is printed in the Mutarjim Publishing-Printing Center

It is signed to the press: 09.05.2025
Format: 70x100 1/16. Headset: Times New Roman.
Volume: 13 c.pr.sh. Printing: 100. Order number:.

"Mutarjim" Publishing-Polygraphic Centre
Baku, Rasul Rza street., 125/39b
Tel./faks (+994) 12 596 21 44
e-mail: mutarjim@mail.ru